MHI
Copy 3

FM 7–10

WAR DEPARTMENT

INFANTRY FIELD MANUAL

RIFLE COMPANY, RIFLE REGIMENT

June 2, 1942

FM 7–10

INFANTRY FIELD MANUAL

RIFLE COMPANY, RIFLE REGIMENT

UNITED STATES
GOVERNMENT PRINTING OFFICE
WASHINGTON : 1942

WAR DEPARTMENT,
WASHINGTON, June 2, 1942.

FM 7–10, Infantry Field Manual, Rifle Company, Rifle Regiment, is published for the information and guidance of all concerned.

[A. G. 062.11 (4–21–42).]

BY ORDER OF THE SECRETARY OF WAR:

G. C. MARSHALL,
Chief of Staff.

OFFICIAL:

J. A. ULIO,
Major General,
The Adjutant General.

DISTRIBUTION:

R and H, 2, 3, 5, 6, 17 (5), 4, 7 (10); Bn 4, 5, 6, 7, 18, 19 (3); C 4 (10), 6 (2), 7, 19 (15).

(For explanation of symbols see FM 21–6.)

TABLE OF CONTENTS

	Paragraphs	Page
CHAPTER 1. General	1– 10	1
CHAPTER 2. Offensive combat.		
Section I. Approach march	11– 14	14
II. Reconnaissance, plans, and orders	15– 19	22
III. The attack	20– 26	37
IV. Reserve rifle company in attack	27– 30	47
V. Night attack	31– 36	50
VI. Attack in woods	37– 40	60
VII. Attack of villages	41	62
VIII. Attack of river line	42– 53	63
IX. Attack of fortified locality	54	68
X. Raids	55– 57	68
CHAPTER 3. Defensive combat.		
Section I. General	58– 63	70
II. Front-line rifle company in defense	64– 76	73
III. Reserve rifle company in defense	77– 85	83
IV. Retrograde movements	86– 90	86
CHAPTER 4. Security missions	91– 99	93
CHAPTER 5. Rifle platoon.		
Section I. General	100–105	106
II. Attack	106–110	107
III. Defense	111–126	121
IV. Security missions	127–132	126
CHAPTER 6. Rifle squad.		
Section I. General	133–139	130
II. Attack	140–148	132
III. Defense	149–155	143
IV. Security missions	156–159	145
CHAPTER 7. Weapons platoon.		
Section I. General	160–169	160
II. Attack	170–181	165
III. Defense	182–193	176
CHAPTER 8. Administration.		
Section I. Supply	194–203	186
II. Medical service and evacuation	204–207	197
III. Motor maintenance	208	198
CHAPTER 9. Signal communication system	209–214	199
APPENDIX I. Individual protection		202
II. Directives for tactical training of rifle company		214
INDEX		266

INFANTRY FIELD MANUAL

RIFLE COMPANY, RIFLE REGIMENT

CHAPTER 1

GENERAL

■ 1. COMPOSITION.—*a. General.*—The rifle company is the basic infantry unit with administrative and supply functions. The company consists of a company headquarters, three rifle platoons, and one weapons platoon. (See fig. 1.)

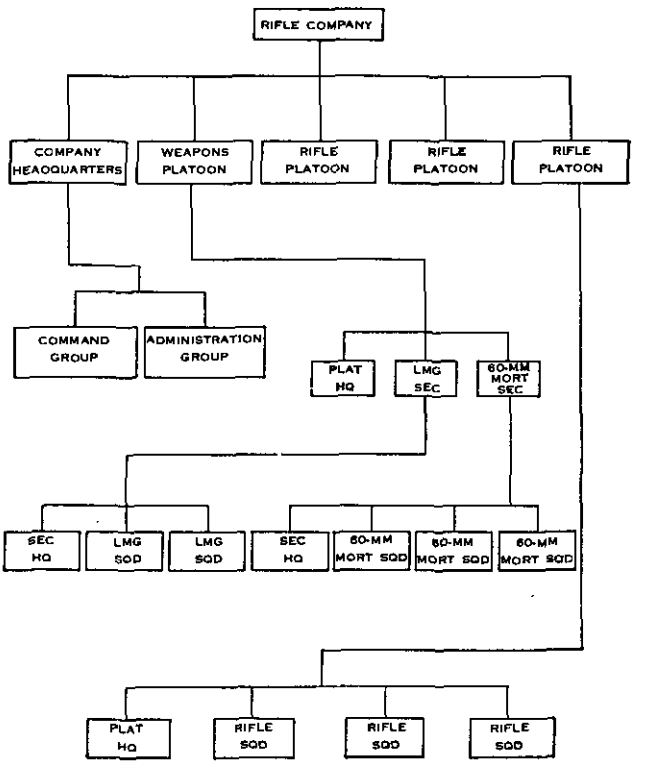


FIGURE 1.—Composition of rifle company.

b. Company headquarters.—Company headquarters includes the personnel necessary to assist the company commander in performing his tactical, administrative, and supply duties. It is divided into:

(1) *Command group.*—Company commander, second-in-command, first sergeant, communication sergeant, bugler, orderly, messengers.

(2) *Administration group.*—Supply sergeant and armorer-artificer; mess sergeant, cooks, and cooks' helpers; company clerk.

c. Rifle platoon.—The rifle platoon consists of a platoon headquarters (command group) and three rifle squads.

d. Weapons platoon.—The weapons platoon consists of a platoon headquarters (command group), one 60-mm mortar section, and one light machine-gun section.

■ 2. WEAPONS.—*a. General.*—The weapons of the rifle company include individual and crew-served weapons.

(1) The individual weapons are the rifle, bayonet, carbine, pistol, hand grenade, and antitank rifle grenade.

(2) The crew-served weapons are the light machine gun, 60-mm mortar, and automatic rifle.

(3) For description and characteristics of weapons, see FM 23–5, 23–10, 23–15, 23–25, 23–30, 23–35, 23–45, and 23–85.

b. Individual weapons.—(1) *Rifle and bayonet.*—(*a*) *Rifle M1.*—The M1 rifle is the principal individual weapon assigned to rifle company personnel. On account of its long range, ease of operation, and light weight it is well adapted for use in all types of infantry combat. These characteristics enable a rifleman or group of riflemen to deliver promptly a large volume of accurate fire upon any designated ground and air targets within range.

(*b*) *Rifle M1903.*—One M1903 rifle is furnished to each rifle squad for use in firing the antitank rifle grenade. This rifle can also be used for firing at ground and air targets with caliber .30 ammunition.

(*c*) *Bayonet.*—The bayonet is a weapon of close combat. Thorough training in its use gives the infantryman confidence in his ability to close with the enemy.

(2) *Carbine.*—The carbine furnishes fires of greater volume and accuracy than the pistol. Its effective range is 300 yards.

It is used to protect the personnel of crew-served weapons, and as an individual weapon by personnel to whom it is issued.

(3) *Pistol.*—The automatic pistol is an arm of emergency and individual defense at ranges up to 50 yards for personnel not armed with the rifle, automatic rifle, or carbine.

(4) *Hand grenades.*—(*a*) The fragmentation hand grenade is used primarily in defensive situations. The fragmentation of this grenade is effective through a radius of 30 yards.

(*b*) The offensive type of hand grenade is used against personnel in offensive situations. The concussion caused by the explosive charge has an effective radius of about 7 yards.

(5) *Antitank rifle grenade.*—The antitank rifle grenade, HE, M9, is provided for the purpose of combating tanks and armored vehicles. The grenade is fired from a U. S. rifle, caliber .30, M1903, which is carried by the antitank rifle grenadier of each rifle squad. A practice grenade M11 is provided for instruction in mechanical training, marksmanship, and technique of fire. Each rifle from which the grenade is to be fired is provided with a soft rubber pad to be placed over the butt, and also with a launcher (muzzle extension) which fits over the muzzle and into the base of the fin-tail assembly. The launcher holds the grenade in place during the period of aiming. The grenade may be fired from the prone, standing, sitting, or kneeling positions, or from a foxhole or slit trench. Within its effective range, approximately 75 yards, the high explosive grenade M9 is effective against all known light and medium tanks.

c. Crew-served weapons.—(1) *Light machine gun.*—The light machine gun is used—

(*a*) To supplement rifle fires by placing short, concentrated bursts of fire upon grouped hostile personnel at medium or short ranges.

(*b*) To protect flanks.

(*c*) In defense, to supplement the fires of heavy machine guns.

(*d*) To engage lightly armored vehicles such as armored personnel carriers, armored cars, and scout cars.

(2) *The 60-mm mortar.*—(*a*) The 60-mm mortar may be employed against targets up to its maximum range of 1,935 yards, but accuracy is materially reduced beyond 1,000 yards. The fire of the mortar should not be placed within 100 yards of friendly troops. Observation within voice or arm-and-hand signaling distance from the mortar position is necessary for proper fire control.

(*b*) The mortar is used—

1. To engage known targets defiladed from flat-trajectory fire or small areas known or believed to contain suitable targets.
2. To fire on observed targets of grouped personnel or crew-served weapons.

(3) *Automatic rifle.*—(*a*) The automatic rifle provides the rifle squad leader with an easily controlled and maneuvered weapon capable of a large volume of fire. It is used against ground targets in a manner similar to the light machine gun, and also engages air targets. Its light weight permits the automatic rifleman to maintain the rate of advance of riflemen and to fire from any position.

(*b*) Certain weapon carriers in the company are provided with a pedestal mount and equipped with an automatic rifle, for the protection of all company weapon carriers against hostile airplanes and ground forces.

d. Methods of movement.—(1) When exposed to effective hostile small-arms fire, light machine guns, mortars, and ammunition are moved by hand. Whenever the terrain is suitable and hostile fires permit, these weapons and ammunition are moved on weapon carriers.

(2) Individual arms and automatic rifles (except those on weapon carriers) are always carried by the individuals to whom assigned.

e. Types of positions.—(1) *Firing positions.*—(*a*) Firing positions occupied by the light machine gun and the 60-mm mortar to cover assigned sectors of fire or target areas are classified as—

1. *Primary position.*—The firing position offering the best conditions for the accomplishment of the mission of the weapon.

2. *Alternate position.*—A firing position from which the same fire missions can be executed as from the primary position. The route from the primary position to the alternate position should permit movement of the weapons by hand and afford concealment and cover from enemy observation and fire. The alternate position should be located at such distance from the primary position as to be outside the effective radius of fires specifically directed on the primary position.
3. *Supplementary position.*—A firing position from which the weapon can accomplish secondary fire missions which cannot be accomplished from primary or alternate positions.

(*b*) An enemy will search for locations of machine guns. Dust clouds caused by firing and muzzle blast disclose the gun location. Wet cloth, such as burlap, when available, or dampening the earth beneath the muzzle will aid in reducing dust clouds. Positions can often be found which afford complete protection from hostile observation except from the direction in which the gun is firing. Such positions are found on the sides of hills and behind mounds, in or behind buildings, brush, and similar obstructions.

(c) The curved trajectory of the mortar enables it to be fired from defilade. Because of its low relief, minor terrain features (such as shell holes, ditches, or small hillocks) afford some cover. Advantage is taken of vegetation to conceal the mortar from observation.

(*d*) Individual protection for weapons and personnel will be sought and improved, or prepared whenever troops are halted in a combat zone. This applies equally for all primary, alternate, or supplementary positions as well as temporary locations of men and weapons during the attack. (See appendix I.)

(2) *Cover positions.*—(*a*) Whenever practicable, leaders select cover positions affording defilade and concealment for men and weapons not actively engaged with the enemy.

(*b*) In attack, the cover position should be immediately in rear of the firing position of the rifle squad or the crew-served weapon. (See fig. 3.)

(c) In defense, the cover position is located near, and is occupied after, firing positions are prepared. Lacking suitable natural cover, appropriate substitutes may be constructed. Sentinels are posted at the primary firing position to give warning of hostile approach.

(3) *Off-carrier position.*—The off-carrier position is the point at which the weapons of the weapons platoon, an initial supply of their ammunition, and accessories are removed from the carrier and from which these are moved by hand to the firing or cover position. The off-carrier position should afford defilade and concealment for carriers and men. (See fig. 3.)

■ 3. EQUIPMENT.—For equipment of the rifle company, see current Table of Basic Allowances and Tables of Organization.

■ 4. TRANSPORTATION.—*a.* The organic transportation of the rifle company consists of weapon carriers, which transport the weapons and ammunition of the weapons platoon. For their employment in ammunition supply, see paragraph 201.

b. The battalion trains (the battalion section of the transportation platoon of the service company—FM 7–30) transport the kitchen equipment, rations, water, clothing not required by individuals, extra ammunition for issue prior to combat, and certain operating personnel.

■ 5. TACTICAL EMPLOYMENT.—*a.* The rifle company is employed in accordance with the battalion commander's plan. The company commander bases his plan upon the mission assigned in the battalion order and coordinates the action of his platoons and the fires of all weapons at his disposal. The rifle company may be assigned to the forward echelon or to the battalion reserve. The company commander must keep the battalion commander fully informed of the situation on the front of the company. First contact with the enemy and new identifications are aways reported by the most rapid means ava lable. During pauses in combat, the company commander makes a brief combat report to battalion headquarters concerning any important change in the situation. In add.tion, a report is made upon reaching an objective, or upon committing the company support to action.

b. When the company is acting alone, it is employed as directed by the commander who assigned the company its

mission. The company commander will, of necessity, have to make more decisions on his own initiative than he will when operating with his battalion. His major decisions, as well as frequent reports of location and progress, are submitted promptly to the higher commander.

c. The company commander is responsible for reconnaissance in the company area of operations and for the security of his company.

■ 6. ESTIMATE OF SITUATION.—An estimate of the situation is the process of reasoning by which a commander arrives at a plan of action to carry out his mission. The company commander analyzes, with respect to his mission, the terrain, the dispositions of friendly and hostile troops, the relative strength of his own unit and the enemy, and the assistance he can reasonably expect from supporting or adjacent troops. From this analysis he determines what plans are open to him to accomplish his mission and what are the enemy capabilities of interfering. He then opposes each of his plans by each of the enemy capabilities, and thereby determines which of his plans is most likely to succeed no matter what action the enemy takes. For units as small as the rifle company, the estimate is comparatively brief and simple. It is based upon available intelligence, amplified by personal reconnaissance and the reconnaissance of subordinate leaders and patrols. The estimate of the situation culminates in a decision which expresses concisely what the commander intends to do with his company. (See FM 101–5.)

■ 7. DUTIES OF COMPANY COMMANDER.—*a. General.*—The commander is responsible for the discipline, administration, supply, training, tactical employment, and control of his company. He is responsible that his company is trained to accomplish its combat tasks decisively; to function as an effective unit in the military team. He must anticipate and plan in order to prepare his company for prospective missions; his supervision must be continuous to insure that all subordinates properly execute their part in the company task. *Decision* as to a specific course of action is his responsibility in conformity with orders from higher headquarters. While he may accept advice and suggestions from any of his sub-

ordinates, he alone is responsible for what his unit does or fails to do.

b. Orders.—(1) Having decided upon a detailed plan of action to carry out an assigned mission, the company commander must assign specific missions to his subordinate units. Company orders are usually issued orally to the leaders concerned or as oral or written messages. Sketches are furnished when practicable. Prior to combat, subordinates frequently can be assembled to receive the order. This facilitates orientation prior to issuance of orders and enables the company commander to insure that his orders are understood. (See FM 7–40.)

(2) Whenever practicable, the order is issued at a point from which terrain features of importance to subordinates can be pointed out. In attack, this often will be impracticable because of hostile observation and fires. If time is limited and leaders are separated, the company commander will issue his orders in fragmentary form. Leaders of units which are engaged with the enemy are not called away from their units for the purpose of receiving orders.

c. During combat.—During combat the primary duties of the company commander are—

(1) To know where the enemy is, and what he is capable of doing.

(2) To keep informed of the situation on his front and flanks.

(3) To anticipate the needs of his platoons for supporting fires, employ the supporting weapons under his control to provide such of these fires as is practicable, and call on the battalion commander for additional supporting fires whenever the situation demands it. In calling for such fires, he specifies the target, and also indicates when and for how long such fire is desired.

(4) To insure mutual support and cooperation by the subordinate elements of his company.

(5) To assist adjacent companies whenever this can be done without detriment to the accomplishment of his own mission.

(6) To insure continuous all-around protection of his company.

(7) To control the company support prior to its commitment, and then employ it to accomplish the company mission, or to exploit a favorable situation developed by the success of his own or adjacent units.

(8) To insure proper execution of his orders by supervision, and prompt intervention when required.

(9) To control the employment of company transportation within the company area, and insure the timely replenishment of ammunition.

(10) To keep the battalion commander informed, by frequent reports, of the situation of his company and of all information obtained of the enemy.

■ 8. COMPANY HEADQUARTERS.—*a. Groups.*—The members of company headquarters are grouped, according to the nature of their duties, into the command group and the administration group.

b. Duties of command group.—(1) The company commander employs his command group primarily to assist him in making the necessary preparations for employing his company in combat and in controlling the company during combat. (See par. 7.)

(2) The second-in-command (first lieutenant) keeps abreast of the tactical situation as it affects the company, replaces the company commander should the latter become a casualty, and performs any other duty assigned him by the company commander. During combat, he is in charge of the command post until he assumes command of the company or of a platoon. He maintains communication with the company and battalion commanders. He notifies the battalion commander of changes in location of the command post, usually by sending a new messenger to relieve the messenger previously sent to the battalion command post. (See (6) below.) He is frequently made responsible for controlling the movement of weapon carriers within the company area, and for the resupply of ammunition to platoons in compliance with general instructions issued by the company commander. (See par. 201.)

(3) The first sergeant assists the company commander by the performance of any duties which the latter may assign him. During combat his duties may vary from handling ad-

ministrative and supply matters to commanding a platoon, if casualties make this necessary. Ordinarily, he assists the second-in-command as directed, is in charge of the command post when no officer is present, and takes over the communication and administrative duties of the second-in-command when he leaves the command post.

(4) The communication sergeant is trained in the use of sound-powered telephones and visual signals (including pyrotechnics), in the preparation of sketches and overlays, and as an observer. He assists the company commander in observation and control. He supervises all visual signals, assists in organizing observation over the company front, and supervises the installation and operation of company sound-powered telephone equipment or other technical signaling equipment made available to the company. He receives and dispatches the messengers and agents who are with the company commander and performs such other duties as the company commander directs.

(5) The bugler is trained as an observer and is employed to assist the company commander in observation and control.

(6) All messengers are also trained as observers. One messenger accompanies the company commander, assists him in observation and control, and carries messages to the command post or other company elements. One messenger is sent to the battalion command post as soon as the battalion develops for combat. Other company messengers remain at the command post to carry messages as directed.

(7) The orderly is trained as a messenger and as an observer. He accompanies the company commander wherever he goes, acts as his personal bodyguard, and assists him in observation and control.

(8) Upon deployment of the company, one messenger from each platoon reports to the company command post; when the sections of the weapons platoon operate independently, this platoon sends two messengers. Frequently, an agent corporal from the battalion heavy weapons company reports to the rifle company commander. Battery forward observers from the supporting artillery, operating in a company zone of action or area, also report to the company commander and notify him as to their location.

c. Duties of the administration group.—For duties of the administration group, see chapter 8.

■ 9. ROUTE MARCH.—*a. General.*—The rifle company normally moves as an element of the battalion in route column until the battalion is developed. The command group is usually formed as a squad and marches at the head of the company. The weapons platoon, less weapon carriers and accompanying personnel, normally marches in rear of the last rifle platoon. The weapon carriers usually move with other motor transportation in rear of the battalion or regimental foot column.

b. Daylight march.—During a daylight march, unless otherwise directed, the company marches in column of twos, one file on each side of the road. The company commander continuously studies the terrain so that he can deploy his company in suitable formation quickly. He requires his officers and noncommissioned officers to enforce march discipline and to prevent straggling. The leading company commander maintains the rate of march prescribed by the battalion commander; other company commanders regulate the rate of march so as to retain their proper position in the column. Ordinarily, the company commander is at the head of his company; however, he goes wherever his duties require.

c. *Antimechanized defense and antiaircraft security.*—(1) *Warning system.*—Timely warning is a vital factor in reducing losses from air or mechanized attack. As required by the situation, air-antitank guards are detailed for the protection of the company, or to protect separate platoons. These guards are assigned sectors of observation.

(2) *Standard warning signal.*—(*a*) In transmitting warning of the approach or presence of hostile aircraft or mechanized vehicles, air-antitank guards, or other personnel engaged on security missions, use the following signals:

Three long blasts of a whistle, vehicular horn, siren, or klaxon repeated several times;

Three equally spaced shots with a rifle, automatic rifle, carbine, or pistol; or

Three short bursts from a machine gun or submachine gun.

(*b*) In daylight, the individual giving the signal points in the direction of impending danger. At night, the warning signal is supplemented by voice warning to indicate the direction of danger.

(*c*) All organic means of communication are immediately employed to transmit the warning signal throughout the company or separate platoon.

(3) *Action in case of attack.*—(*a*) *General.*—Upon receipt of warning of hostile air or mechanized attack, foot troops disperse and take cover. If marching, they first clear the road. Troops utilize nearby holes or ditches for individual protection; they take advantage of any nearby obstacles to tank movement. Weapon carriers, if with the company, clear the probable impact area of air attack and move into suitable nearby locations which provide obstacles to tank movement.

(*b*) *Antiaircraft fire.*—In the absence of orders, the company commander decides whether or not fire will be opened on hostile airplanes. When concealment is essential and is believed to have been achieved, no weapons fire at hostile airplanes. When concealment is not essential, or obviously does not exist, all men armed with rifles, automatic rifles, and carbines open fire as soon as the attacking airplanes are within effective range of their respective weapons.

(*c*) *Antimechanized fire.*—In case of attack by tanks, or more lightly armored vehicles, antitank rifle grenades are employed within effective ranges (75 yards). (See par. 2*b* (5).) Primary targets for M1 rifles, carbines, and light machine guns are hostile foot troops. These weapons do not ordinarily fire on approaching tanks, but do fire on lightly armored vehicles, such as personnel carriers or scout cars, which come within effective range of their respective weapons. Having taken cover against tanks, personnel and weapons return to firing positions as soon as the tanks have passed, so as to fire on approaching foot troops.

d. Night march.—At night, the company commander takes special measures to insure march discipline, maintenance of contact, and provision for security. Special attention is given to the avoidance of lights and noise. Units are kept well closed up and distances are greatly reduced. If illuminated by flares from hostile aircraft, the company halts and all in-

dividuals keep their heads down and remain motionless until the light dies out. Hostile aircraft are not fired at unless the column is actually attacked.

■ 10. BIVOUAC.—*a.* Normally, the rifle company bivouacs as part of the battalion or larger unit and is assigned a location within the battalion bivouac area. The company commander, or his representative, divides the area among the platoons and company headquarters, reserving locations for the company command post, company transport (unless other arrangements have been directed for it), kitchens, and latrines. He selects an emergency assembly point to facilitate prompt, orderly movement from the area if that becomes necessary.

b. The bivouac outpost, air-antitank warning system, and interior guard are provided by the battalion or regimental commander. One officer and one noncommissioned officer are constantly on duty in each platoon. They are especially alert for any indications of attack by gas, mechanized vehicles, and aircraft. Protective trenches will be dug for all personnel. (See fig. 30.) These trenches (and shelter tents if erected) are concealed from aerial observation. Antitank rifle grenadiers are located so as best to protect the entire company in case of mechanized attack.

c. For action to be taken against hostile planes or tanks, see paragraph 9*c*.

CHAPTER 2

OFFENSIVE COMBAT

		Paragraphs
SECTION I.	Approach march	11–14
II.	Reconnaissance, plans, and orders	15–19
III.	The attack	20–26
IV.	Reserve rifle company in attack	27–30
V.	Night attack	31–36
VI.	Attack in woods	37–40
VII.	Attack of villages	41
VIII.	Attack of river line	42–53
IX.	Attack of fortified locality	54
X.	Raids	55–57

SECTION I

APPROACH MARCH

■ 11. GENERAL.—*a.* The approach march is conducted to bring the company close to the enemy in readiness for action and with minimum losses. It begins when the company leaves the route column to deploy as ordered by the battalion commander; or in event of sudden emergency it begins when the company commander deploys on his own initiative to avoid undue losses. It ends when the company reaches a point from which it must engage in a fire fight to advance farther without excessive casualties.

b. Approach march formations vary according to the nature of the terrain and the strength of friendly covering forces.

c. The battalion commander's development order prescribes the company's position in the battalion formation. It usually leaves the company dispositions to the company commander's direction. Usually the battalion order assigns a zone of advance, a direction of advance with a definite frontage, or directs regulation of the march on a base company. Successive march objectives may be assigned.

d. Having received the battalion development order, the company commander issues his own order, usually in fragmentary form. This should include—

(1) Necessary information of the enemy and friendly troops.

(2) Mission, and initial march objective of the company.

(3) Distribution of rifle platoons and command group to leading and support echelons; distribution of and missions for elements of weapons platoon; distances between units or echelons; and designation of base unit.

(4) Direction (compass bearing or distant landmark) or route to be followed.

(5) March objectives and frontage for leading platoon(s) (usually in daylight march only).

(6) Reconnaissance and security measures, including air-antitank guards.

(7) Action to be taken in case of ground, air, or mechanized attack (usually covered in battalion standing operating procedure).

(8) Disposition of weapon carriers, if under company control.

(9) Position and prospective future movement of the company commander.

e. The company commander is responsible for the close-in protection of his company from the instant it leaves the battalion column. When his advance is not covered by other troops, within view, he sends out scouts or patrols to precede the company in order to deal with hostile patrols and give warning of hostile occupied localities. Exposed flanks are protected by flank security patrols, and contact is maintained with adjacent units by connecting groups, taken from the rear rifle platoon(s). (See pars. 17*i* and 157*f*.)

f. The company commander is with or in advance of his leading platoon(s). If another company is the base company, he has his base platoon guide on that company; otherwise he insures that it maintains the proper direction and rate of march. He assigns additional march objectives, whenever necessary, and makes such changes in direction, formation, or security and reconnaissance measures as variations in the terrain, visibility, or tactical situation may require.

g. Platoon messengers report to the company command post as soon as platoons have gained their positions in the company formation. (See par. 8*b* (8).)

■ 12. APPROACH MARCH BY DAY.—*a.* In daylight the approach march must be made in formations which provide protec-

tion against artillery fire, attack by ground forces, and air attack; which permit maximum utilization of the terrain for concealment and cover and for protection against attack by armored forces; and which enable the company commander to maintain control of his company. Consequently, platoons will be separated laterally, or in depth, or both. On open terrain, platoons may be separated by as much as 300 yards. In woods, distances and intervals must be decreased until adjacent units are visible, or, if the woods are dense, connecting files or groups must be used between platoons. The company commander does not usually prescribe the formation to be taken within platoons but promptly corrects any erroneous formation taken by them. For platoon dispositions, see paragraphs 106*a* and 170*b*.

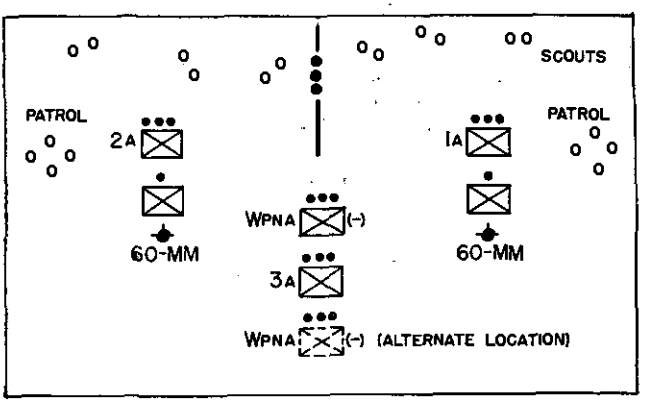
b. The company commander, assisted by members of the command group, conducts continuous personal reconnaissance to locate the best covered routes of advance. Shelled and gassed areas, those exposed to hostile small-arms fire, and points (such as villages, defiles, road junctions, and small woods) likely to have been registered upon by hostile artillery are avoided, if practicable. If areas swept by fire cannot be avoided, they are crossed by rushes of individuals or small groups under control of subordinate leaders. The company commander may decide to cross dangerous areas (such as roads, crests, or embankments) which are not actually under fire by a rush of the entire company. Otherwise he signals platoon leaders to have their platoons proceed individually.

c. Irrespective of the company's position in the battalion formation, guards are necessary to give warning of air or mechanized attack. The company commander's initial order assigns sectors of observation to platoons to provide continuous all-around observation. See paragraph 9c for action against hostile aircraft and mechanized vehicles.

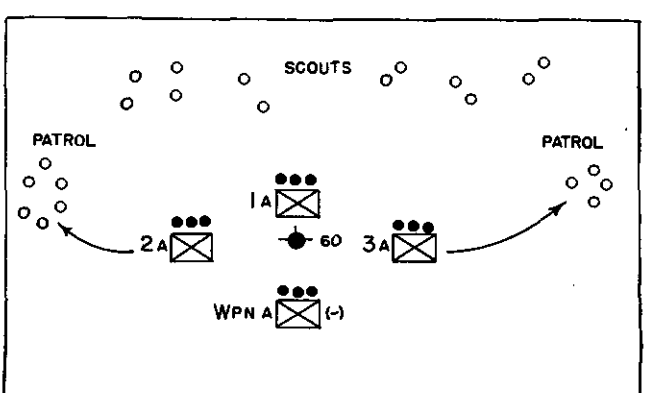
d. (1) Regardless of whether or not other forces are in front of the battalion during its approach march, the battalion and the company are responsible for protecting themselves and conducting reconnaissance to the front and flanks. The approach march of the battalion may be conducted with one or more companies in the leading echelon. A leading

company will ordinarily be assigned a zone of advance and be given specific reconnaissance and security missions. Figure 2 ① and ② shows schematically two formations which may be used by a leading company.

(2) The company commander assigns a frontage and one or more objectives to each leading platoon. These objectives include the initial company march objective assigned by the



① Schematic formation, leading company, approach march.



② Schematic formation, leading company, approach march.

FIGURE 2.

battalion, and other intermediate terrain features (preferably 500 to 600 yards apart) essential for protecting the remainder of the battalion and covering any preparations for attack.

(3) Leading platoons are frequently reinforced by mortar squads. The weapons platoon, less mortar squads attached to leading rifle platoons, should be moved by routes and to areas where it can most effectively support the leading elements. Rifle platoon(s) in the support echelon are moved by bounds so as to take maximum advantage of concealment and cover and be favorably disposed to protect the more vulnerable flank of the company.

(4) The advance is executed by bounds; each successive objective should be in the possession of both leading platoons before the rear echelon of the company leaves the cover of the preceding objective. A brief halt may be made at each march objective to check directions and make any necessary changes in formations or security measures.

e. (1) *A rifle company in the rear echelon* of the battalion maintains contact with the leading company by double connecting files. If there is little threat of a hostile attack from a flank, column of platoons (with at least 50 yards between platoons) facilitates control and enables the entire company to use a route which provides maximum concealment and protection.

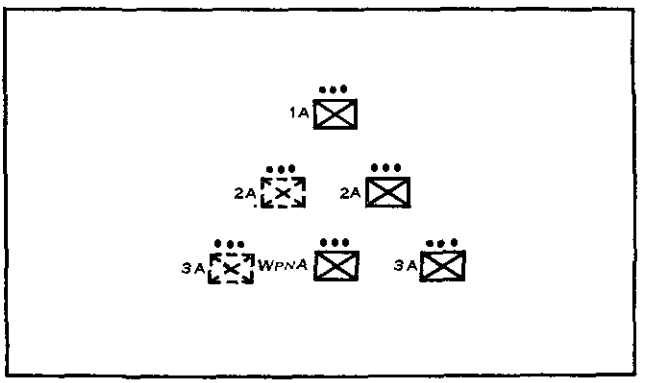
(2) If a hostile attack from one or both flanks is reasonably possible, the rifle platoons should be echeloned toward the exposed flank or flanks and the weapons platoon should follow the leading rifle platoon, moving approximately abreast of the rear rifle platoon. (See fig. 2 ③.)

(3) If there is no threat of a hostile attack from a flank but dangerous areas must be crossed, line of platoons (with platoons separated by such intervals that they can deploy as skirmishers without overlapping) will enable these dangerous localities to be crossed in the minimum time. (See fig. 2 ④.)

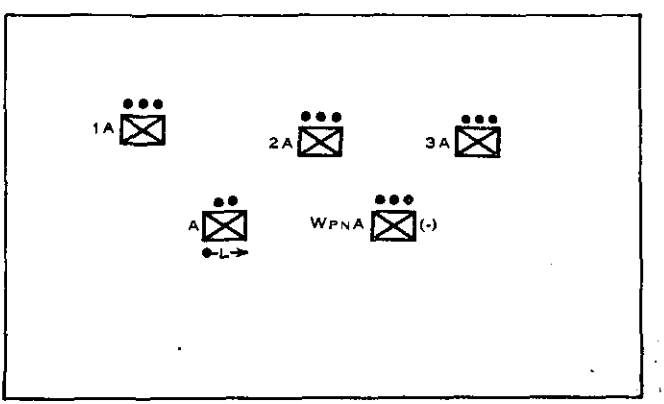
(4) The company commander selects successive march objectives, advances his company by bounds, and limits halts on objectives to a minimum, in the same manner as does the commander of the leading company.

■ 13. By Night.—*a.* At night, maintenance of direction, control, and contact between units are more difficult than

in marches by day. Whenever practicable, a night march is made along routes which have been reconnoitered by day. If the march is across country, the route should be plotted and the march directed by compass. A circuitous route which follows easily distinguishable terrain features is often preferable to one more direct but less clearly marked.



③ Rear echelon—contact maintained with leading company by connecting files.



④ Rear echelon crossing dangerous areas.

FIGURE 2—Continued.

b. The battalion commander prescribes the route or the direction (by compass bearing) to be followed by the leading company. The company commander is responsible that where practicable his route is thoroughly reconnoitered and marked prior to dark. Other company commanders must similarly reconnoiter and mark the route from the point where their companies will leave the battalion column to go to their final assembly area or attack position.

c. The leading company is charged with so regulating the rate of march as to insure that contact and control can be maintained within the battalion. Companies in rear maintain contact with the unit preceding them by means of connecting files.

■ 14. COMPANY IN ASSEMBLY AREA.—*a*. The company may be ordered to occupy a portion of a battalion assembly area. The battalion commander may direct that one officer from the battalion and one noncommissioned officer guide from each company precede the battalion to the assembly area, in transportation furnished by the battalion. Each guide becomes familiar with his company's assigned area and rejoins his company commander just prior to the arrival of the company at the entrance to the assembly area. (Usually these details are covered in standing operating procedure.)

b. In order to insure the uninterrupted forward movement of units in rear, the company moves into its assigned area without halting. The company commander can facilitate this movement by one of the following methods:

(1) Direct the company guide to divide the company area into platoon areas. As the company nears the area, send one guide forward on foot from each platoon to join the company guide and locate his platoon area, then to rejoin his platoon in time to conduct it promptly into that area.

(2) Upon nearing the area, precede his company by a few hundred yards with the company guide and members of his command group and spot members of the command group as guides along the route to the company's area. Upon arrival, rapidly reconnoiter the area and divide it into platoon areas; then meet each platoon at the entrance to the company area and point out the area it is to occupy.

c. Weapon carriers, if under battalion control during the approach march, revert to company control in the assembly area. Upon reaching the company area two guides should be sent back to the entrance to the battalion assembly area to guide the battalion ammunition truck and the company weapon carriers to their location in the assembly area.

d. Platoons should be disposed within the company area in accordance with their contemplated future employment.

e. The company commander is responsible that—

(1) Immediately upon arrival in the assembly area, troops and vehicles are as widely dispersed as the size of the area will permit.

(2) Advantage is taken of all natural concealment, and of every accident of the terrain, to conceal troops and vehicles from hostile aerial or ground observation and to minimize the effect of artillery or aerial bombardment.

(3) Advantage is taken of all obstacles to tank movement, such as streams, closely spaced stumps, boulders, or large trees.

(4) Each individual not adequately protected by natural cover digs an individual prone shelter. (See fig. 30.)

(5) A disciplinary guard is promptly established to prevent exposure to aerial or ground observation and to maintain dispersion of all personnel.

(6) Local security is promptly established to prevent surprise attack by hostile patrols.

(7) Antitank rifle grenadiers are located so as to protect the company against hostile armored vehicles.

(8) Air-antitank guards are posted in accordance with battalion *standing operating procedure.*

(9) Pack rolls, if not previously disposed of, are stacked and concealed in an accessible location as directed by the battalion commander.

(10) If time permits, the physical condition and equipment of each individual is checked by his immediate superior.

(11) Men are given all possible rest.

f. Extra ammunition is issued when ordered by the battalion commander. When the battalion truck carrying this ammunition arrives, it is placed in the best available cover. The issuance of this ammunition is so conducted that not

more than a few men are congregated at the point or points of issuance at any time. (See par. 201.)

g. If the company is to remain in the area after dark, an emergency assembly point should be designated. (See par. 10.)

h. In case of air or mechanized attack, action is taken as prescribed for bivouacs. (See par. 10.)

i. On occasion, particularly when in battalion reserve, the rifle company occupies an assembly area selected by the battalion or company commander and entirely separated from other units. In this situation the company commander, in addition to the matters covered in the preceding paragraphs, establishes his own air-antitank guards.

j. (1) If the movement from the battalion assembly area is to be made in daylight and there is little cover or concealment, the company should be moved directly to the line of departure.

(2) Otherwise, the company is moved from the battalion assembly area to a company assembly area where it can be concealed and protected from small-arms fire. The occupation of a company assembly area greatly assists platoon leaders in orienting their noncommissioned officers and issuing attack orders. It also facilitates the issuance of orders by squad leaders to their squads. To minimize the risk of casualties from hostile fire, this final assembly area should ordinarily be occupied for the minimum period prior to the time of attack. When the movement to it is made in daylight, maximum use must be made of available cover to conceal the movement from hostile aerial and ground observation.

k. Properly instructed air-antitank guards are posted. See paragraph 9*c* for action against hostile aircraft and mechanized vehicles.

SECTION II

RECONNAISSANCE, PLANS, AND ORDERS

■ 15. RECEIPT OF BATTALION ORDER.—*a.* The battalion attack order, written or oral, may be delivered to the company commander at the company location by the battalion commander or his representative.

b. (1) The company commander may be directed to join the battalion commander at a forward location to receive the

order. In this situation, the company commander should take with him an additional leader to insure that the order is received by the company even though the company commander becomes an early casualty. This additional leader may be the second-in-command, a platoon leader, or a senior noncommissioned officer.

(2) When the battalion order is received, shortage of time will often require that the company commander delegate to others the accomplishment of certain preparatory tasks. Therefore, appropriate personnel should be available in a concealed position near the place where the order is issued. This party may include the communication sergeant (to select an observation post and prepare sketches), the orderly, the bugler (to act as observer at the observation post), messengers, and, if available, platoon leaders.

(3) However, at least one officer must remain with the company at all times.

c. During the issuance of an order, all company representatives present with the battalion commander make the necessary notes or entries on their sketches (maps).

■ 16. ACTIONS OF COMPANY COMMANDER FOLLOWING RECEIPT OF ORDER.—*a. Initial actions.*—Upon receipt of the battalion order, the company commander rapidly sizes up the situation, determines how and in what sequence the essential preparatory steps are to be accomplished, and decides what he will do personally and what he will delegate to others. Among the essential preparatory steps are to—

(1) Decide on the manner of issuing the company attack order. If subordinates can be assembled to receive it, this involves early designation of time and place of issuance, decision as to who are to be present, and issuance of instructions to insure their presence.

(2) Issue instructions for movement of the company to the company assembly area or area of departure; or, if time permits, lead it personally. In any case it should be led over a reconnoitered route.

(3) Select an off-carrier position (subject to restrictions imposed by the battalion commander), select the most advanced location to which ammunition can be brought by

carrier, and arrange for reconnaissance of routes to these points if necessary. (See fig. 3.)

(4) Arrange for securing additional information of the enemy from the covering force commander and for the prompt establishment of the company observation post.

(5) Confer, if practicable, with commanders of covering forces, adjacent units, and with commanders of units furnishing supporting fires.

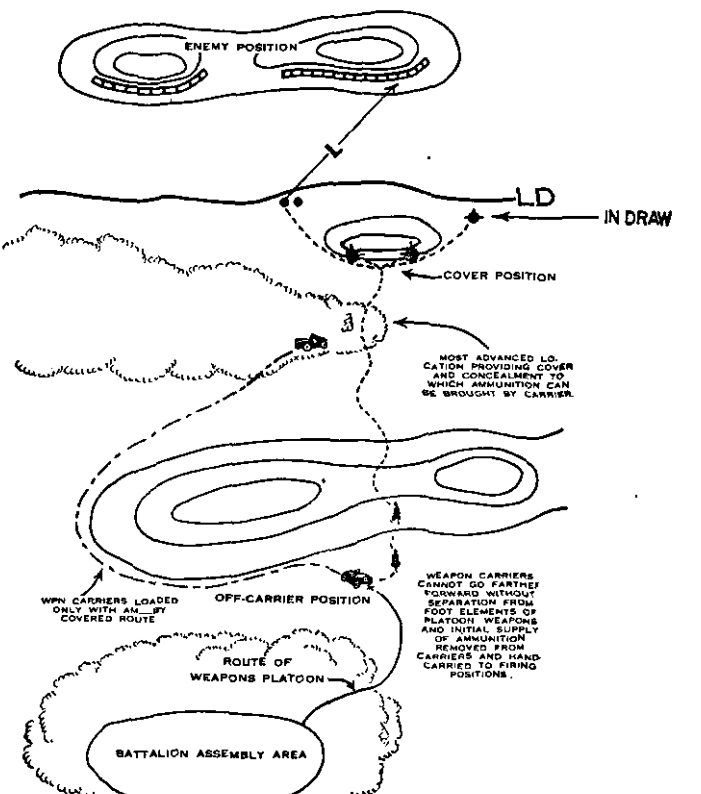


FIGURE 3.—Off-carrier position.

(6) Have simple sketches prepared for the platoon leaders and other selected personnel, unless maps are available.

(7) Plan and carry out a personal reconnaissance.

(8) Plan the attack.

(9) Issue the company attack order in time to allow subordinates adequate opportunity for their reconnaissance, the issuance of their orders, and the disposition of their units for the attack. (If possible, at least one-half hour should be allowed for these purposes.)

(10) Check and supervise the execution of his orders, to insure readiness of the company to attack at the specified time.

b. Conferences.—Brief conferences should be held with commanders of adjacent units and supporting weapons before they leave the locality where the battalion order was issued. Frequently all that can be accomplished at this time is to make definite arrangements for a later interchange of information, either through conferences or messages. Information desired from commanders not present must be secured by contacting them while on reconnaissance or by dispatching agents to confer with them. The information ordinarily desired is:

(1) From the local covering force commander:

(*a*) Exact locations of elements through which the company is to pass.

(*b*) Detailed information of hostile activities and dispositions, such as exact locations of automatic weapons, observation posts, antitank guns, and entrenched groups of riflemen, and recent patrol actions.

(2) From adjacent commanders:

(*a*) Their plan of attack (to facilitate cooperation).

(*b*) Method of maintaining contact between the two units.

(3) From supporting weapon commanders: Exact position areas and target areas of their weapons (to avoid premature masking of their fire and to determine where company weapons can be located).

c. Sketches.—Simple sketches of the company zone of action and adjacent terrain, drawn on the back of a message blank, can be quickly reproduced by using additional message blanks and the carbon paper in the back of the message book.

If possible, these sketches should be in the hands of the subordinate leaders when the company attack order is issued. Certain details of the plan of attack may be drawn on them and the order thereby shortened. Their chief value, however, is to facilitate mutual understanding of orders and reports exchanged after the attack starts.

d. Reconnaissance.—(1) Maps or photo maps do not show the little variations of the terrain which small units must utilize to fight their way forward successfully. Unless the lack of time prohibits anything other than a map reconnaissance, the company commander makes a terrain reconnaissance before he decides on his plan of attack. The thoroughness of this reconnaissance will depend on the time available; it may consist of only a brief observation from one point. Careful planning is essential to utilize the time available to the maximum. Before starting, the company commander should make a brief map study, get the available information of the enemy and of what adjacent and supporting units are to do clearly fixed in his mind, determine what to look for, and decide where he can go in the time available to secure the greatest knowledge of his zone of action.

(2) His reconnaissance, or that made by others at his direction, should also include—

(*a*) Selection of routes forward from the battalion assembly area, for the company, including routes for weapon carriers.

(*b*) Determination of the most forward point to which weapons can safely be brought on carriers (off-carrier position). The battalion commander may prohibit the movement of weapon carriers forward of the battalion assembly area until later in the attack. In this case, the off-carrier position is in the assembly area. (See fig. 3.)

(c) Determination of the most forward point to which ammunition can safely be delivered by carrier and, if necessary, the best route thereto.

(*d*) Selection of position areas for the weapon sections and of locations for the company observation post and command post.

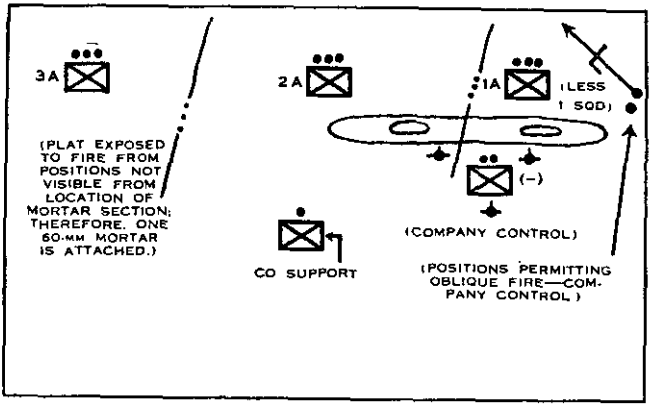
■ 17. PLAN OF ATTACK.—*a. General.*—(1) The mission of an attacking rifle company initially is to capture a locality, or

localities, held by the enemy. To do this it must close with the enemy by a combination of fire and movement. It must take advantage of every accident of the terrain to conceal and protect the company, or any part of it, while in movement. Every movement must be covered (*a*) by fire delivered by part of the company by company supporting weapons, or both, and so placed that it neutralizes that part of the enemy's infantry which could otherwise effectively fire on the individuals or elements that are moving; or (*b*) by battalion supporting weapons prepared to deliver such fire.

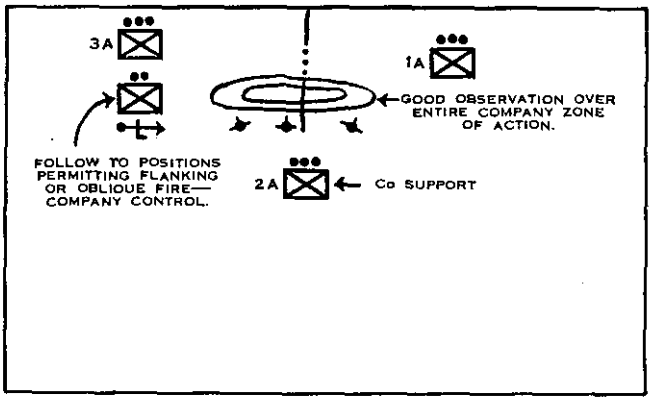
(2) During his reconnaissance the company commander seeks to determine where enemy guns and men are, and where others might be located, since the enemy will rarely disclose his entire strength or exact dispositions until forced to do so by our attack. He notes the routes or areas where the enemy's observation or fire is most hampered by the nature of the terrain and which, therefore, are most favorable as avenues of approach to the hostile position. He considers the assistance he can expect from smoke and from the fire of supporting weapons, and notes the available localities where his own weapons could be placed to support the movement of his rifle units. He also considers whether adjacent units will initially be ahead, behind, or abreast of his company, determines from this whether his flanks initially are protected or exposed, and notes whether the terrain affords the enemy concealment from which to launch surprise counterattacks as the attack progresses. With these factors in mind, he decides how best to employ the elements of his company in order to accomplish his mission promptly and with the fewest casualties. He thus determines his plan of attack. The plan must provide for coordination to insure maximum teamwork between the attacking platoon(s) and supporting weapons.

b. Formation.—(1) A formation, for the initial attack, with all three rifle platoons (less a small fraction of one in support) abreast is exceptional; it is usually appropriate only when the company is assigned an extremely broad zone of action and the initial use of all available weapons is essential to establish fire superiority. Figure 4 ① shows schematically such a company attack formation.

(2) Employing a formation with two rifle platoons in the attacking echelon and one in support, the company can deliver a strong initial attack while retaining a strong support to influence future action; this formation is the one most frequently used. (See fig. 4 ②.)



① Formation for attack on broad front.



② Formation for strong initial attack.

FIGURE 4.

(3) A formation with one rifle platoon in the attacking echelon and two in support is frequently used when the company has a very narrow zone of action, when it is operating on an exposed flank, or when the enemy situation is obscure. In this formation the platoons in the rear echelon may be disposed in column behind the leading platoon; echeloned behind the leading platoon toward an exposed flank; or, if both flanks are exposed, they may be echeloned one to each flank of the leading platoon. (See fig. 2 ③ and ④.)

c. Time of attack.—The time of attack is normally prescribed in the battalion order. Exceptionally, when it must be determined by the company commander, he allows time for the movement of the company to its attack positions, and also for the necessary reconnaissance, preparation of plans, and issuance of orders by himself and his subordinate leaders when these activities cannot be carried on concurrently with the movement. The start of the attack may be coordinated by directing subordinate elements to initiate their forward movement at a definite hour, or by requiring them to be ready at that hour, but to commence their operations on a prescribed signal.

d. Attack positions.—The battalion order may designate a line of departure or direct the company to launch its attack from a given area or locality. If a prescribed line of departure is difficult to locate on the ground, or not approximately perpendicular to the direction of attack, or cannot be reached without exposing the attacking echelon to hostile observation and fire, the company commander should direct that each platoon in his attacking echelon start its attack from a more suitable line of departure, or from an area or point slightly in rear of the line designated by the battalion. Whatever method is used, the time of attack announced for each platoon should be such that its leading personnel will clear the line, area, or locality prescribed by the battalion commander at the time set in the battalion order.

e. Scheme of maneuver.—(1) An interior company will ordinarily be assigned a zone of action from 200 to 500 yards in width. The cover and concealment from hostile observation and fire afforded by accidents of the terrain will seldom

be uniform in all parts of this zone. Also, the available supporting fires will seldom be sufficient to neutralize all hostile elements opposing the advance. Reconnaissance often discloses that the hostile position is occupied irregularly, open areas forming salients to the front being lightly occupied, while broken terrain and covered approaches forming reentrants into the position are more strongly occupied. Any attack which disregards the terrain and the actual or likely hostile dispositions by attempting to advance in equal strength all along the front has little chance of success. Therefore, the company commander must plan to concentrate his efforts on advancing a portion of his attacking echelon through that part of the company zone which offers the best cover and concealment and which strikes the enemy position at a weak spot. (See fig. 4 ③ and ④.)

(2) The remainder of the attacking echelon should be directed to attack by fire and movement through that portion of the company zone offering the best remaining concealment and cover, in order to force the enemy to disperse his efforts so that he cannot use his full defensive strength against one portion of the attacking echelon.

f. Zones of action and objectives.—(1) Each rifle platoon in the attacking echelon should be assigned a definite zone of action. The zone of action is defined by assigning the platoon a particular section of the line of departure or an area or point from which to start its attack, a direction of attack, and a definite terrain objective, or series of objectives, to be captured. If desired, the width of the zone may be indicated by directing that the platoon attack on a frontage prescribed in yards. This is its "zone of responsibility" from which it is responsible for driving forward and gaining the objectives assigned. (See par. 108*d*.) Normally, the frontage assigned the platoon should not be less than 100 yards or more than 200 yards; under exceptional circumstances, these limits may be varied. The platoon often can take advantage of covered routes in adjacent platoon zones of action to maneuver against hostile resistance within it. For this reason, boundaries between platoons are seldom prescribed.

(2) One of the most effective means of coordinating the efforts of the company is by the assignment of successive

objectives to attacking platoons. Each platoon should be assigned, as its initial objective, the nearest terrain feature or hostile position within its zone of action whose capture is essential to the further advance of the company as a whole. It should be directed to continue its attack, after the initial objective has been captured, either in a given direction or against another definite objective. When the company commander desires to control the action more closely, the platoon may be directed to be prepared to continue the attack. If

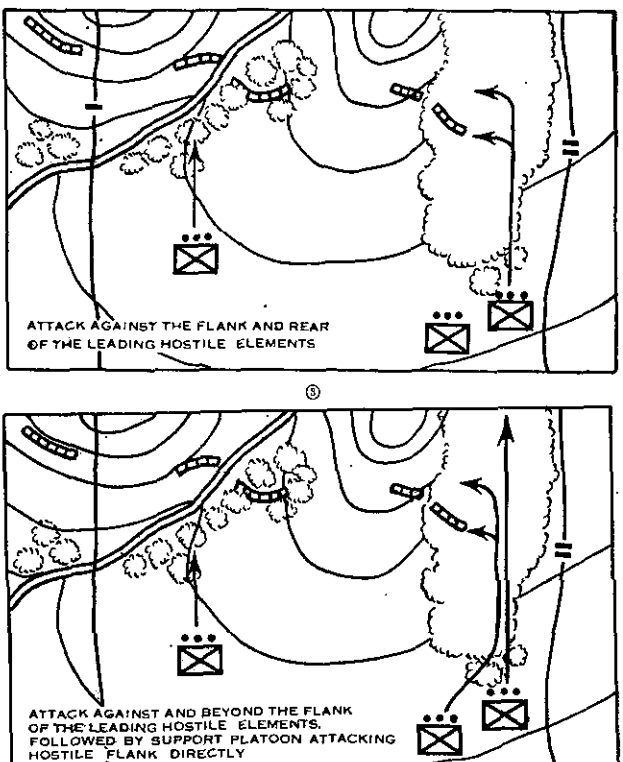


FIGURE 4—Continued.

the platoon has been directed only to be prepared to continue its attack, the company commander must later give the order to resume the attack and assign the next objective. Depending on the terrain, there may be several of these successive platoon objectives to be captured, in turn, before the attacking echelon reaches the initial objective assigned the company by the battalion commander.

g. Support.—At the start of the attack the company commander should hold out a support for later use in repelling counterattacks, replacing an exhausted part of the attacking echelon, or striking the final blow necessary to capture an objective. It must be adequate in strength to accomplish its probable missions; with an exposed flank, a rifle platoon is usually the minimum. Since its missions require that the support be able to maneuver, advance by fire and movement, and close with the bayonet, it cannot be taken only from the weapons platoon. In the attack order it may be assigned an initial concealed location and directed to await orders there. Usually, however, because of the company's limited communication facilities, it is directed to follow by bounds in rear of that part of the attacking echelon nearest to the area of its most probable employment. Whenever a definite employment of the support can be foreseen it should be directed to be prepared to accomplish this mission; this will enable its leader to conduct reconnaissance and make plans in advance.

h. Use of supporting weapons.—(1) The 60-mm mortars should be put in position early—prior to the start of the attack—for use in neutralizing any hostile weapons or massed groups which may impede the advance of the attacking echelon. Because of their small radius of burst and the difficulties of ammunition supply, the mortars should not be used for searching large areas, for prolonged concentrations, or for fire on indefinite targets. Prompt employment depends on having an observer so located that he can adjust fire on the target; therefore, the company commander should clearly state in his attack order the area or areas into which the mortars are to be prepared to fire. If suitable targets have been located, they should be assigned as initial fire missions. When an attacking rifle platoon cannot be effectively supported by mortar fire under company control,

a mortar squad may be attached to that platoon; otherwise, mortars are retained under company control. (See FM 23–85.)

(2) If possible, light machine guns should be employed to place flanking or oblique fire on hostile defensive positions opposing their own company or adjacent units. Such fire places the greater part of the beaten zone on the target and is more effective than frontal fire. (See fig. 5.) They may also be employed to protect an exposed flank where a suitable field of fire is available. They should be employed for frontal fire only when the terrain and other factors of

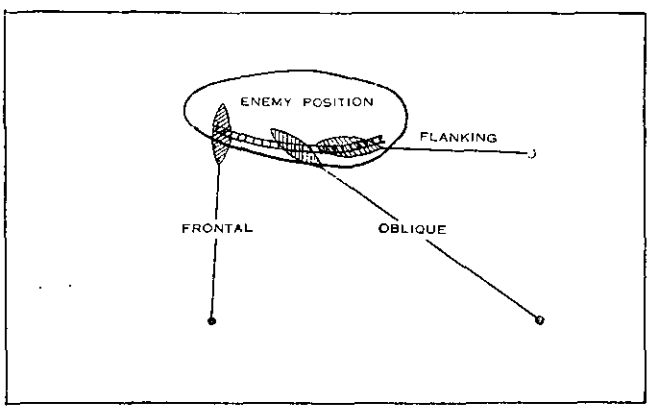
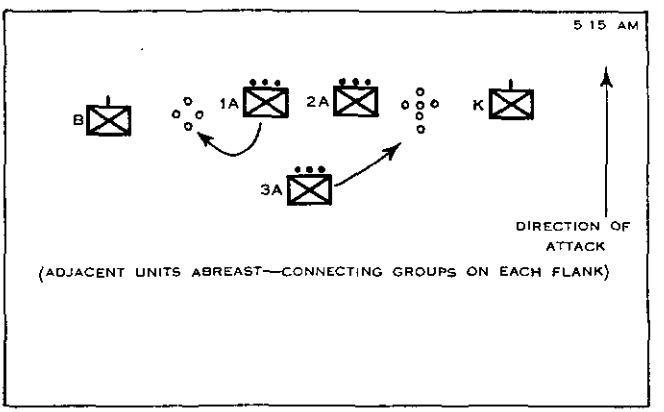


FIGURE 5.—Classes of fire with respect to target.

the situation do not permit their employment for flanking or oblique fire, and their fire is essential to establish fire superiority or to repel a hostile counterattack. Being air-cooled, they must fire in short bursts and their greatest effect is secured by placing the fire of both guns on a small area. Wherever practicable, they should operate from positions in rear of and close to the flanks of the most advanced rifle units. It is seldom desirable to attach light machine guns to a rifle platoon, since this places additional burdens of control and of supervising ammunition supply on the rifle platoon leader. The attack order should either assign them a definite position area and definite targets or a sector of fire; or, if

suitable positions initially are not available, the order should direct that they follow some element of the attacking echelon. In the latter case, the mission(s) they are to accomplish, after suitable firing positions are reached, should be definitely stated in the order.

i. Security.—(1) Irrespective of any flank protective measures that may be taken by higher commanders, the company commander is responsible for the close-in protection of his flanks throughout the attack. Usually there will be gaps between the company and the units on its right and left. If at the start of the attack an adjacent unit is abreast or



①

FIGURE 6.

ahead of the company, and the gap can be covered by the fire of both companies, the company commander employs a connecting group to maintain contact with the adjacent unit and to report periodically the location of its nearest flank. (See fig. 6 ① and ②.) If, however, these conditions do not apply, the company commander should detail a larger flank security patrol to provide close-in flank protection. (See fig. 6 ③.)

(2) Ordinarily security groups should be detailed from the support. These groups may operate directly under the com-

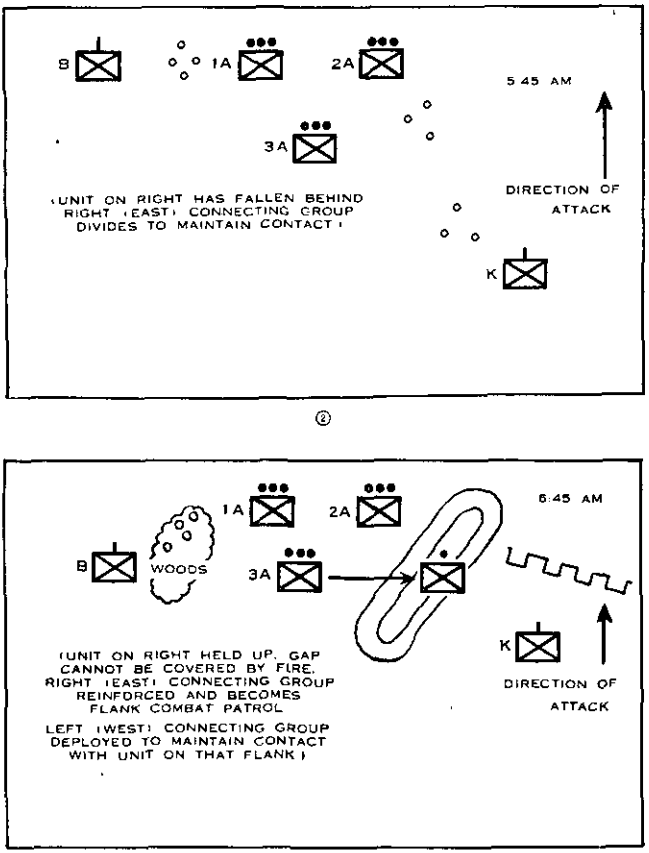


FIGURE 6—Continued.

pany commander or he may delegate control by directing that platoon leaders provide for contact on or protection of a given flank. Under the last-named condition, he frequently prescribes the maximum size of the group. (See pars. 108*b* (4) and 157*f* and *g*.)

(3) Timely warning is a vital factor in reducing losses from air and mechanized attack. Rifle platoons provide their own air-antitank guards. The antitank rifle grenadiers are not removed from their platoons to provide protection for other elements of the company; they are employed under their platoon leaders to protect the platoon areas. Protection of the company as a whole is accomplished by assigning specific directions or areas of possible tank attack to each rifle platoon. The company commander is responsible for the coordination of the defense measures. The battalion commander, with weapons at his disposal, provides protection in depth or augments the defense provided by the antitank rifles.

■ 18. COMPANY ATTACK ORDER.—*a*. The company commander issues orders for the attack to his platoon leaders and the second-in-command. In addition, when conditions permit, the first sergeant, the communication sergeant, the supply sergeant, platoon sergeants, and the two weapons section leaders may be assembled to hear the issuance of the order.

b. The company order must clearly convey the plan of attack by including—

(1) Such information of the enemy and our own troops, not already known by subordinates, as they should know in order that they may accomplish their assigned tasks. Information of our own troops should include only the location and actions of supporting and adjacent units which have a direct bearing on the company's attack.

(2) The company mission.

(3) The time of attack.

(4) The line, point, or area of departure; direction of attack and initial objective for each attacking rifle platoon, and the action to be taken by each platoon following capture of its initial objective.

(5) Specific instructions for the weapons platoon. These include definite position areas and targets, or definite missions, for the light machine-gun and mortar sections.

(6) The location of the support and, wherever practicable, an indication of its probable employment.

(7) Instructions for maintaining contact and for flank protection.

(8) Location of the battalion ammunition distributing point and the battalion aid station; the initial location of the weapon carriers retained in the company area; and such other administrative instructions as are desirable.

(9) The location of the company command post, and the initial, and probable future, location of the company commander.

■ 19. COMMAND POST IN ATTACK.—The command post of an attacking rifle company seldom should be located over 400 yards behind the front line. It is moved forward as the company advances. The new locations are reported to the battalion command post. All locations selected should provide concealment from hostile ground observation, defilade against hostile fire, and, if possible, concealment from aerial observation.

SECTION III

THE ATTACK

■ 20. MOVEMENT TO LINE OF DEPARTURE.—The movement to the line of departure is a continuation of the approach march. Security during the movement is provided by scouts, patrols, and observers.

■ 21. CONDUCT OF ATTACK.—*a. Fire and movement.*—(1) The approach march formation is maintained by the leading platoons until they are compelled to fire in order to advance. These platoons then complete their deployment. Ordinarily fire is opened on orders of the platoon leader; the company commander may, however, reserve to himself the authority for opening fire in order to gain surprise.

(2) At the first firing position each attacking platoon seeks to gain fire superiority over the enemy to its front by subjecting him to fire of such accuracy and intensity that the hostile fire becomes inaccurate or diminished in volume. Battalion supporting weapons and artillery assist by fires on the hostile forward positions (unless masked by the attacking platoons) and by neutralizing rearward hostile elements which could fire on the attacking echelon. For the employment of combat aviation and tanks in the support of infantry attacks, see FM 7–5, 7–40, and 100–5. The company

commander employs his weapons platoon to neutralize hostile elements which are not being neutralized by other fires.

(3) Further advances are made by infiltration, by successive rushes of fractions of the leading squads and platoons, or by maneuver of rear echelons. The movement of advancing elements is covered by the fire of those remaining in position and by the fire of company and battalion supporting weapons and of artillery. Every lull in hostile fire is utilized to push groups forward and occupy the natural strong points of terrain from which fire, particularly that of automatic weapons, can be delivered. This combination of fire and movement enables attacking rifle elements to reach positions from which they can overcome the enemy in hand-to-hand combat.

(4) Because of unequal resistance by the enemy, differences in terrain, and variations in the assistance received from supporting fires, some units will be able to advance while others are held up. A platoon or company not stopped by fire pushes on to capture the final objective, even though adjacent units have been stopped. This advance outflanks resistances holding up adjacent units, frequently enables light machine guns to be placed in positions from which they can deliver flanking or oblique fire on the hostile resistance, and may permit company supports to be moved into the gap to envelop the enemy or gain his rear. *Islands of resistance are thus overcome by combined frontal and flanking action.*

b. Reconnaissance and control.—(1) Once the fire fight has commenced the company commander's influence on the fight is largely confined to the employment of supporting fires and of his support echelon. To plan ahead and act effectively at the proper time, he must keep constantly informed of the situation on his front and flanks.

(2) The company commander posts himself where he can best direct and control the action. Whenever practicable he occupies an observation post from which he can see all, or at least the vital part, of the company zone of action; observers are posted to watch the remainder of the front and flanks. His position must permit messengers free movement. He must be able to communicate readily with the company command post, with the support, and with supporting weapons

under his control. Whenever conditions make effective control of the entire company impracticable from such an observation post, he goes wherever he can best observe and control the action of that part of the company whose operations are most vital to success.

(3) Ordinarily the communication sergeant, orderly, bugler, a company messenger, an agent corporal from the heavy weapons company, a messenger from each platoon, and a messenger from any weapons section operating directly under control of the company commander are dispersed under cover in the company commander's immediate vicinity. Other personnel of the command group operate from the company command post. The company commander usually sends written or oral messages direct to platoon or weapons section leaders. He sends messages to the battalion commander or to commanders of other companies through the company command post. He uses sound-powered telephone equipment to communicate with that element of the company with which rapid communication is most vital or with an element with which communication by messenger or visual signals would be impracticable. He often delegates supervision of the operation of weapon carriers to the second-in-command, first sergeant, or supply sergeant; but requires that he be kept informed of the location(s) of the most advanced weapon carrier(s).

(4) To maintain control the company commander must know the location of his platoons and weapons sections and what they are doing. In addition to personal observation and that of members of his command group, he requires periodic reports from his subordinate leaders as to positions, effect of supporting fires, and important developments. Messengers reporting to the company commander are retained, and messengers from the same units who have been with the company commander are then sent to rejoin their unit, usually with a brief message informing the subordinate leader of important developments. This periodic interchange of messengers is one of the most effective means of retaining constant control of the company action.

c. *Coordination.*—Throughout the attack the company commander seeks to bring about the closest possible coordi-

nation between the movements of his rifle platoons and the fire of all supporting weapons. He must not permit rifle units to do slowly that which supporting weapons can do promptly, or to attack without supporting fires when assistance by supporting weapons will save both time and casualties. However, the location of attacking elements must be known before supporting fires can be employed safely. Whenever the support of his own weapons platoon is insufficient, he should call on the battalion commander for artillery fire, and on the heavy weapons company (usually through the agent corporal) for heavy machine-gun or mortar fire. (See par. 7c (3).)

d. Employment of weapons platoon.—(1) The weapons platoon should be pushed forward aggressively whenever effective fire is no longer possible from the position occupied, or whenever captured terrain offers positions from which more effective support is possible.

(2) The company commander must keep in mind that the light machine guns are not capable of sustained fire and that resupply of ammunition usually presents a serious problem. Therefore, he should concentrate the fire of both guns, if possible, on targets of limited extent, when and where this fire will best assist the advance of his own or adjacent units or provide flank protection. (See *a* (4) above.) Advantage may thus be taken of an open field of fire on a flank of the company to bring fire on hostile resistance in front of adjacent rearward companies, to protect against hostile counterattack, or to neutralize cross fires from hostile elements on the flanks. It is particularly desirable to get these guns into positions on the flank of hostile resistance just prior to an assault, so that they can maintain flanking fire on the enemy after all other supporting fires have been forced to lift.

(3) The advance of the mortars must be so regulated as to enable them to respond promptly to the needs of rifle platoons. However, since the mortar squad can carry by hand only sufficient ammunition to permit firing continuously for two minutes, care must be exercised in the selection of targets and the expenditure of ammunition. Hence, mortars are used against the following types of targets:

(*a*) Hostile machine guns or mortars in position defilade, or personnel either defiladed or entrenched, which are defi-

nitely impeding the advance and are known to be located in a small area (about 50 yards square).

(*b*) Hostile forward positions, to maintain fire superiority during the final advance of rifle units to within assaulting distance, when other supporting fires are masked.

(*c*) Hostile counterattacks, when mortar fire is essential either to stop the attacks or to slow them down to gain time for other measures to be taken.

(4) The company commander is responsible that weapon carriers located in the company area are kept concealed in defilade. Because it is slow and sometimes difficult to carry ammunition considerable distances by hand, he moves the carriers forward whenever practicable.

e. Employment of support.—(1) The support must be close enough to the attacking echelon to permit prompt employment against hostile counterattack. If the support has been directed to follow the attacking echelon by bounds from one covered position to another, the company commander must insure that it remains within supporting distance but does not merge with the attacking echelon. If the company commander initially directed the support to await orders in a certain location, he must issue timely orders for its forward movement.

(2) Variations in terrain or in the situation may require a change in the manner of controlling the movement of the support or a change in the distance at which it is to follow the attacking echelon. It is the company commander's responsibility to judge the conditions and direct these changes whenever necessary.

(3) The support should not be used piecemeal. Except to take advantage of an opportunity to strike a decisive blow or to repel hostile counterattack, the company support should not be employed when the attacking platoons still have supports not committed to action, or when supporting fires alone will permit a resumption of the attack. However, when the opportunity occurs to strike a decisive blow or its use is necessary to renew the impetus of a stalled attack, the company support should be committed without hesitation. In either case, it should be employed, preferably for flank attack or envelopment, where the attack has progressed against enemy

weakness rather than against strong resistance. If necessary, it may be employed through an adjacent zone. It must not, however, interfere with the action of the adjacent troops and the adjacent commander is informed of the action taken.

(4) Whenever the support is committed, the company commander seeks to reconstitute another support. However, troops actually under hostile fire cannot be withdrawn for this purpose without suffering excessive casualties. In order to provide himself with a small support for use in case of emergency, the company commander may forbid the employment, without his prior approval, of the uncommitted support of a rifle platoon, or may gather such individuals (messengers or men separated from their unit) as can be safely assembled.

f. Security.—The company commander cannot assume that the original measures taken for flank security will remain effective throughout the entire attack. He requires connecting groups and his observers to report frequently the location of the nearest flank of each adjacent unit. If reports fail to arrive, he takes definite steps to secure this information. He adjusts his flank protective measures to fit changes in the situation as they occur. As long as existing gaps can be covered by fire from his own and the adjacent unit, a connecting group to maintain contact is sufficient; otherwise, he sends out one or more flank security patrols, depending upon the size of the gaps. (See pars. 17*i* and 157*f* and fig. 6 ①, ②, and ③.)

g. Assistance to adjacent units.—(1) The company assists adjacent units—

(*a*) When such assistance will facilitate its own advance.

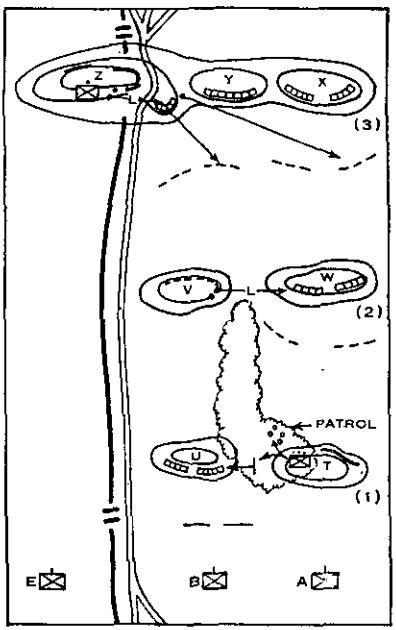
(*b*) When directed to do so by the battalion commander.

(*c*) When, without orders, the company commander estimates that such assistance will best assist in the accomplishment of the battalion mission.

(2) Assistance which enables a rearward adjacent unit to advance abreast is generally an effective means of insuring the security of the company's own flank. (See fig. 7.)

(3) Assistance by fire and movement is usually more effective than assistance by fire only. Such movement, however, must be strongly supported by the fire of all available weapons, including those of the unit being assisted. Also the move-

ment must not result in depriving the company, for an extended period, of the services of elements essential to its own further progress.



F"7Z85 7.—Schematic diagram showing assistance rendered to adjacent units.

NOTES

(1) Co A, having captured Hill T, has been directed to assist Co B in capturing Hill U. Assistance by fire is impracticable on account of intervening heavy woods. Co A therefore employs its support platoon to attack hostile position on Hill U in flank. Capt Co A arranges in advance for fire support from artillery, Co D, and Co B.

(2) Co B, taking advantage of the woods on its right, captures Hill V. Co A is held up in front of Hill W. Co B employs its light machine guns to assist Co A and thereby assist its own advance by removing a possible threat to its own right flank.

(3) Co E has captured its final objective, Hill Z. Cos A and B are held up by machine-gun fire from the east nose of Hill Z. Co E employs the fire of its light machine guns and of part of its support platoon in order to assist the advance of Cos A and B.

■ 22. ASSAULT.—*a.* When the attacking echelon has progressed as close to the hostile position as it can get without masking its supporting fires, these fires lift and the assault is launched. If necessary, the company commander causes the lifting of supporting fires by giving a prearranged signal, or estimates when the attacking units will be ready to assault and arranges with the battalion commander for these fires to lift at that time. When supporting fires are lifted, assault fire may be employed to prevent the enemy from manning his defenses. Supporting weapons cover the assault by directing their fire at those adjacent and rearward hostile elements which are able to fire on the assaulting troops either during the assault or after the position is captured. For the rifle platoon and squad in assault, see paragraphs 108c and 145.

b. The company commander is responsible that the assault is delivered at the proper time. When the attacking echelon has reached assaulting distance, the assault usually is launched by subordinate leaders; otherwise, the company commander orders it by a signal or command, which is repeated by all officers and noncommissioned officers.

c. Following a successful assault, the company commander moves his support platoon and weapons sections forward to secure advantageous positions from which to support the continuation of the attack and, if necessary, to protect reorganization. (See par. 24.)

■ 23. ADVANCE THROUGH HOSTILE POSITION.—*a.* The attack must be pushed through the depth of the hostile position to the company final objective without allowing the enemy any opportunity to reconstitute his defense. The company commander employs every means at his disposal to maintain continuity of the attack and exploits without delay every advantage gained.

b. If not already committed, the support platoon may be used to relieve a badly disorganized attacking platoon or to launch a flanking or enveloping attack to assist in the capture of successive company objectives.

c. If the distance between company objectives is so great that leading platoons are not justified in immediately opening fire, approach march formations may be used initially.

Otherwise, the attack on each company objective is made in a manner similar to the attack on the first objective.

■ 24. REORGANIZATION.—*a.* Whenever a leader or key man becomes a casualty during fighting, he is promptly replaced. If possible, complete reorganization is postponed until the final objective of the company is reached. However, the company must be reorganized whenever disorganization prevents its further effective employment as a fighting team. If hostile fires permit, the rifle platoons move to defiladed positions for complete reorganization; if not, they must make a partial reorganization in place. Time consumed in reorganization must be reduced to a minimum.

b. The company commander must protect the reorganization of the company by—

(1) Prompt and simultaneous movement of the entire weapons platoon to cover the front and exposed flank(s).

(2) Sending patrols from the attacking platoons, or from the support, to cover the front and maintain contact with the enemy. If the platoon leader of the weapons platoon is given the mission of protecting the reorganization of the company, the patrols should operate under his orders.

(3) Employing any available support to furnish protection, preferably by holding at least the bulk of it available for prompt action against hostile counterattack.

c. The company commander directs platoon leaders to reorganize their platoons and to report promptly their remaining effective strength and the state of their ammunition supply.

d. Based upon the reports of the platoon leaders, he causes ammunition to be redistributed. If short of ammunition, he secures more by bringing forward a loaded weapon carrier, by using carrying parties, or by calling upon the battalion.

e. He promptly dispatches a message to the battalion commander, giving the situation, the approximate strength of the company, and any hostile identifications secured. Recently captured prisoners, documents, or material may be sent in with the messenger to save manpower.

f. Completion of the reorganization should find the company regrouped into an effective team, with control reestablished and with sufficient ammunition to continue the attack.

■ 25. PURSUIT.—*a.* After the company captures its final objective, pursuit, except by fire, is not commenced until ordered by the battalion commander. Once begun, it must be characterized by boldness and rapidity and must be pushed to the limit of human endurance.

b. (1) When the company has been ordered to pursue, its formations and actions are very similar to those of the support of an advance guard when contact is imminent, as described in paragraph 92*e*. Usually one rifle platoon is directed to reconnoiter the entire company zone of action and push forward rapidly to gain contact with hostile detachments attempting to delay the pursuit. If unable to overcome rapidly any hostile detachments encountered, it attempts to fix them in position and promptly locate their flanks. This platoon is usually reinforced with a 60-mm mortar and frequently with one or both light machine guns. When the company zone is over 600 yards wide, it may be necessary to employ two rifle platoons in the leading echelon. (See fig. 4 ①.)

(2) The remainder of the company follows closely in support of the leading echelon. It must be prepared to repel promptly a counterattack directed against either flank or to maneuver rapidly to outflank or envelop any resistance fixed by the leading echelon. With one platoon in the leading echelon, a formation with the weapons platoon (less detachments) moving in the center of the company zone and a rifle platoon echeloned toward each flank is frequently suitable.

c. If the company support is still intact when the pursuit begins, it may be employed to commence the pursuit at once, passing through the attacking echelon and moving forward without delay. The platoons of the attacking echelon are directed to complete any necessary reorganization and follow in support without delay. On the other hand, if the company support is not intact, it may be necessary to complete the reorganization of one or more platoons before taking up the pursuit.

d. For the pursuit the battalion commander frequently attaches units of the heavy weapons company to a rifle company. The rifle company commander controls their movement and action, and becomes responsible for their

ammunition supply. He seldom attaches these units to his platoons but employs them under his control to give close support and protection to his leading platoons.

■ 26. ACTION WHEN ADVANCE IS HALTED.—*a.* When the advance of the battalion is definitely halted by hostile resistance, the leading rifle companies pass immediately to the defensive on the ground held. Individual entrenchments are dug immediately. The company commander issues instructions for such organization of the area as is possible. Organization of the ground is usually difficult because of disorganization of units and intensity of enemy fires. It may be necessary for the platoons and squads to dig in as best they can and wait for darkness to complete the organization of the position. The supporting weapons must be promptly sited for defense and all other practicable preparations made so that the company will be prepared either to defend its position or to resume the offensive when ordered to do so. For the organization of a company defensive area, see paragraphs 70 and 74.

b. During a temporary halt not forced by enemy resistance, such as a halt ordered by the battalion commander to permit supporting weapons to be brought forward to support a continuation of the attack, the company commander issues necessary instructions to provide security for the company and reduce losses. The measures taken are similar to those of reorganization discussed in paragraph 24. Maximum advantage will be taken of such halts to reorganize the platoons, replenish ammunition supply, and make preparations for the continuation of the attack. Men will be required to construct foxholes or slit trenches to protect them from enemy small-arms or artillery fire and from aerial bombardment.

SECTION IV

RESERVE RIFLE COMPANY IN ATTACK

■ 27. MOVEMENT TO INITIAL POSITION.—*a.* The battalion order designating a rifle company as battalion reserve prescribes the initial location of the company, and may include instructions as to subsequent movements, flank protection, preparations of plans to meet various contingencies, and maintenance of contact with adjacent units.

b. Upon receipt of the battalion order, the company commander considers possible covered routes from the assembly position to the initial reserve position. The selection of the route is made only after reconnaissance, preferably by the company commander. Every effort is made to avoid disclosing to the enemy the location or movement of the reserve. The company commander sends a representative to the battalion commander and establishes liaison with the attacking rifle companies and heavy weapons company, and with battalion or attached antitank units.

c. Having made his reconnaissance of the initial reserve position and the route thereto, the company commander issues his orders. He gives subordinates all necessary information of the enemy and our supporting troops; the battalion plan of attack; and instructions for the movement to the initial position, including security en route, its occupation and protection, and connecting groups.

d. If practicable, the company commander personally leads his company to the initial reserve position, arranging the movement to avoid interference with other units moving to their attack positions. In moving to and while occupying reserve positions, the company takes advantage of all cover and concealment in order to avoid disclosing the battalion scheme of maneuver and to avoid losses. He places platoons so as to facilitate their planned employment. Local security is provided against attack by hostile ground forces and maximum advantage of the terrain is taken to provide passive antimechanized and antiaircraft protection. See paragraphs 9c and 10.

e. The company is ordinarily moved by bounds on orders of the battalion commander. Should the company at any time be located so far in rear of the attacking rifle companies that it cannot effectively support them in case of hostile counterattack, the company commander promptly reports the situation to the battalion commander and requests instructions. He recommends a suitable new position.

■ 28. PLANNING POSSIBLE MISSIONS.—*a.* The reserve company commander should attempt to visualize how and approximately when conditions requiring employment of his company may occur, and prepare plans to meet all possible con-

tingencies. Plans should be as detailed as practicable and should be completed prior to the time the situation they are designed to meet can reasonably occur. If time permits, he submits his plans to the battalion commander for approval. He informs subordinate leaders of the details of these plans. Estimates are made as to the time necessary to put each plan into effect.

b. The reserve company may be assigned one or more of the following missions:

(1) To envelop points of resistance located by the attacking echelon, frequently by movement through the zone of adjacent battalions.

(2) To protect the flanks of leading companies.

(3) To repel counterattacks, especially against the flanks.

(4) To assist the progress of adjacent units.

(5) To take over the role of all, or a part, of the attacking echelon.

(6) To provide contact with adjacent units.

c. When the company is given a mission of maintaining contact on the flanks, the company commander should take the connecting groups from the platoons on the flanks of the reserve position. Their strength should be appropriate to the terrain in which they must work. Connecting groups should be sent out promptly so that they can gain contact before the attack starts. (See pars. 17*i* and 21*f* and fig. 6 ①, ②, and ③.) They may be used for route reconnaissance on their respective flanks for movements of the reserve company beyond its initial position if this duty will not interfere with their contact missions. They should be instructed to send their reports directly to the battalion command post and each member of the groups should be informed as to its initial and proposed locations.

■ 29. RECONNAISSANCE AND LIAISON.—In order to be prepared to execute promptly any of the missions outlined above, the company commander keeps himself constantly informed of the situation—

a. By personal reconnaissance and observation from advantageous points of the terrain.

b. By means of observation posts manned by personnel of the company.

c. By observers accompanying leading companies.

d. By remaining with the battalion commander, or at the battalion command post, or detailing another officer to do so.

e. By means of messenger communication with the battalion commander and with the battalion command post.

■ 30. ACTION WHEN COMMITTED.—When the reserve company is committed to action by the battalion commander, it operates as a rifle company in the attack.

SECTION V

NIGHT ATTACK

■ 31. GENERAL.—The rifle company may be employed in a night attack as part of a battalion or as the principal attacking force. For the general characteristics of night operations, see FM 7–5 and 100–5. For the rifle battalion in night attack, see FM 7–20.

■ 32. COMPANY ORDER.—*a.* The company order for a night attack goes into much greater detail than a similar order for an attack by day. Provision is made for every eventuality that can reasonably occur.

b. The following outline indicates the matter to be included in the company order:

RIFLE COMPANY ORDER FOR NIGHT ATTACK

1. *a.* Information of the enemy.
   b. Information of friendly troops, including supporting fires, if any.
2. Mission.
   Time of attack.
   Rear assembly area.
   Forward assembly area.
   Line of departure.
3. *a.* Movement from rear assembly area to forward assembly area.
   Formation.
   Initial point.
   Time of departure from rear assembly area.
   Route.
   Rate of advance (unless the company is moving in one column led by company commander).
   b. Advance from forward assembly area.
   Formations:
   Company.
   *Rifle platoons. (For use of asterisk see par. 32*c*.)
   *Weapons platoon.
   *Company headquarters.

Security measures.
*Base platoon.
Route.
Rate of advance (if necessary).
Control measures.
Compass direction.

c. Assault.
When to deploy as skirmishers.
Limit of advance on objective.

d. Action after capture of objective.
Reorganization.
*Mission of rifle platoons.
*Mission of weapons platoon.
*Designation of support and mission of same.

x. Means of identification.
Measures to assist in maintaining secrecy.

4. Use or disposition of weapon carriers.
Amount of ammunition to be carried.
Arrangements, if any, for feeding troops.
Location of battalion aid station.
Location of battalion ammunition distributing point.

5. Location of battalion command post.
Location of company command post.
(in rear assembly area and on objective).
*Location of company commander.
(During move from rear assembly area to forward assembly area, in forward assembly area, and during advance from forward assembly area.)
Signal communication.
Pyrotechnic signals.

NOTE.—Paragraph 3 of this order is arranged in sequence of logical time-phases of the operation, with miscellaneous details applicable to the whole command, included in *x*.

c. When the rifle company is part of a battalion which is making a night attack, the battalion commander will usually prescribe all details except those marked * in the preceding outline. He will also direct and restrict the reconnaissance of subordinate leaders and give specific orders for night patrolling prior to the attack and after the capture of the objective.

d. When a rifle company constitutes the principal attacking element of a night attacking force, the battalion commander may prescribe all of the details listed in *c* above. In any situation, he states the objective, the mission of the company after capturing the objective, and the time of attack. He also prescribes the protective fires to be provided by the heavy weapons company and arranges for supporting artillery fires—usually after considering the recommendations of the heavy weapons company commander and the rifle company commander.

■ 33. RECONNAISSANCE AND OTHER PREPARATORY ACTIONS.—*a.* Irrespective of the details prescribed by the battalion commander, daylight reconnaissance by the company commander and his subordinates is essential and is supplemented by additional reconnaissance at dusk and during the hours of darkness. During daylight, reconnaissance of terrain not held by friendly troops is usually impracticable except by observation from points in rear of our front lines. The company commander places such restrictions on reconnaissance as are necessary to preserve secrecy.

b. The daylight preparation of the company commander includes the following:

(1) Prompt issuance of a warning order giving all available information.

(2) Location of exact limits of the company objective.

(3) Selection of forward assembly area and line of departure.

(4) Reconnaissance and marking of the route from the rear assembly area to the forward assembly area by company and platoon guides.

(5) Reconnaissance and marking of the route(s) from the advanced edge of the forward assembly area to the line of departure (if these are not the same).

(6) Reconnaissance and marking of exact points at which platoons are to cross the line of departure.

(7) Designation and reconnaissance of the route of advance for each platoon beyond the line of departure—reconnaissance to be performed by platoon leaders. (See *a* above.)

(8) Determination of compass bearings for the advance of the platoons beyond the line of departure. (When the battalion commander prescribes the direction of attack, such direction is usually that from the center of the area of departure to the center of the objective, and will not necessarily be the same as that for individual companies or platoons.)

(9) Selection by observation, if practicable, of points where platoon columns will deploy into squad columns (if such formations are to be used), and into skirmish lines.

(10) Location of ridges, roads, hedges, telephone lines, or any other landmarks that may be used at night to assist in maintaining direction and control.

(11) The issuance of a warning order in time to permit subordinate leaders to make their reconnaissances before dark. Platoon leaders cannot make satisfactory daylight reconnaissances unless they know the general plan of the company commander. Final details of the attack order are usually issued after reconnaissances are completed.

■ 34. PLAN OF ATTACK.—*a. General.*—The plan for a night attack is characterized by simplicity and minuteness of detail. Careful preparation is essential. No set method can be followed. The difficulties of maintaining direction, control, and cohesion vary directly with the degree of visibility existing at the time of the attack and the methods used must be varied accordingly. To plan the attack the company commander's information of hostile forces (size, composition, and night dispositions), the contemplated action of friendly troops, and the terrain to be traversed, must be as complete and detailed as possible.

(1) The company commander obtains information of hostile forces—

(*a*) From the battalion commander.

(*b*) By contact with front-line elements.

(*c*) By establishment of observation posts, when sufficient daylight remains to justify it.

(*d*) By personal reconnaissance of the company commander and his subordinates.

(*e*) By study of available aerial photographs.

(*f*) By night patrolling. (See par. 158*f*.) (This is frequently the only means of obtaining detailed information of hostile outguards and listening posts.)

(2) Information of friendly troops is obtained from the battalion commander, and by contact of the company commander or his representative with the units involved.

(3) Detailed information of the terrain can often be augmented by night patrolling.

b. Direction and control.—The company commander takes advantage of every possible means of maintaining direction and control. Such means are:

(1) The use of guides for movements in rear of, and forward of, the line of departure. Competent guides frequently can be selected from patrols who have been over the area.

(2) Designation of boundaries along unmistakable terrain features, if such exist.

(3) Designation of compass directions for each element of the company.

(4) The use of connecting files or groups, both laterally and in depth. The need for such elements will be determined by the visibility. (See (7) and *e* (2) below.)

(5) Designation as base platoon of the platoon having the most easily identified route to follow.

(6) Regulation of the rate of advance. (See *d* below.)

(7) Prescription that the advance be made by bounds. Bounds are made from one recognizable terrain feature to another, if possible. Where no such terrain features exist, columns may be directed to halt after moving a given distance, after moving a prescribed number of steps, or at stated time intervals. (See par. 35*a* (3).)

(8) Retention of the company formation in platoon columns as long as practicable. If practicable, deployment as skirmishers should be delayed until within 100–200 yards of the objective. However, deployment should be completed before coming within view of sentries located on or in close proximity to the objective. (See *g* (6) below.)

(9) Prescription in the attack order of the detailed mission to be accomplished by each platoon after capturing the objective.

c. Time of attack.—The time of attack is usually prescribed by the battalion commander in order to secure necessary coordination, particularly when displacement of heavy weapons to the captured objective is contemplated. However, the company commander may be called upon to submit recommendations for the time of attack when the rifle company constitutes the principal attacking force.

(1) An attack launched during the first hours of darkness frequently strikes the enemy before he has had time to organize his position or his artillery support. It may also anticipate possible night operations on the part of the enemy. It may be delivered after victorious combat in order to frustrate the enemy's attempts to organize a withdrawal at nightfall or to consolidate a position for defense.

(2) An attack during the last hours of darkness may be advantageous as a preliminary operation to a general attack at daybreak because it gives the defender no time to reorganize.

d. Rate of advance.—Normally, the rate of advance to the forward assembly area, if made across country, will be about 1 mile per hour. Beyond this area, usually the rate will be limited to 100 yards in from 6 to 10 minutes, depending upon the visibility. If prescribed by the battalion commander, a rate should be included in the company order. When advancing by bounds, a rate is not prescribed. If practicable, the company commander should regulate the rate himself and not leave it to the base platoon leader.

e. Formation.—(1) Line of platoon columns is the usual formation for crossing the line of departure. If the ground in front of the objective is level or slopes evenly for some distance and if visibility is sufficient to permit control to be maintained, it may be desirable to cross the line of departure in line of squad columns. Whether in line of platoon columns or line of squad columns, squads may be formed in column of twos. This facilitates deployment as skirmishers. Intervals between columns are such that skirmish lines may be formed with not over 2-yard intervals between men. Since ordinarily only men armed with the rifle and bayonet are useful in the assault, a deployed rifle squad can cover about 20 yards at a maximum. All men not armed with the bayonet are placed at the rear of their squads or columns. They do not deploy as skirmishers, but follow closely during the assault.

(2) The weapons platoon, less transportation, must be available shortly after the capture of the objective, but should not be so close to the rifle platoons during the advance that it can become involved in the assault. It may follow the attacking echelon by bounds as directed from time to time by the company commander; in this case, a liaison detail from the weapons platoon should be with the company commander to act as guides. When visibility is good (moonlight), the platoon may be directed to follow an element of the attacking echelon, with a connecting group following the prescribed

element at the limit of visibility and the platoon following the connecting group at the same distance.

(3) The supporting weapons of the attacking force may be placed in position for flank protection of the initial assault. When the terrain is favorable for overhead fire, they may be emplaced in a rearward position to support the attack on signal or to cover a withdrawal.

(4) When a support is held out, it ordinarily moves with the weapons platoon if this platoon follows the attacking echelons. Otherwise, it follows closely the attacking echelon but at such distance as to prevent intermingling of the two elements. At daylight, a support is essential to meet an expected counterattack; if none has been held out, one is constituted from the most easily available personnel after the objective has been captured.

f. Flank security.—Usually a small patrol moving at the limit of visibility abreast of each flank platoon provides adequate flank protection during the advance.

g. Secrecy.—In a night attack surprise is essential and is obtained chiefly through secrecy. Measures to secure secrecy include:

(1) Keeping the exact hour of attack secret until the last possible moment.

(2) Restricting the size and activities of parties engaged in reconnaissances and other preparations for the attack.

(3) Prohibiting loading of weapons until after the capture of the objective.

(4) Prohibiting smoking, use of lights, talking (except on official business and then in a whisper), and shiny or noisy equipment.

(5) Instructing all personnel that only the bayonet will be used during the advance and attack; and insuring that bayonets are fixed before leaving the line of departure.

(6) Darkening faces and hands with dirt or other available substance.

(7) Holding down the rate of advance from the line of departure to that at which the entire company can move in silence. This rate will depend upon the terrain and visibility.

(8) Employing patrols to knock out enemy listening posts and outguards just before the attacking force will reach their location.

h. Identification.—(1) Means of identification for all personnel must be prescribed. These may be in the battalion commander's instructions. If not prescribed in the battalion order, all identifying measures must be communicated to the battalion commander, so that any personnel moving to the objective before daylight can be properly identified. Unless special identifying means are issued, the means prescribed must be readily available to all men. They should *not* be conspicuous and easily observed at night. Identifying noises or words, such as a challenge and answer in very low voice without hissing sound, are also valuable. (See par. 158.)

(2) Distinctive marks for officers also must be prescribed. When practicable, special distinctive marks for noncommissioned officers are desirable.

i. Maneuver.—Platoons advance and attack straight to the front, although detours of a few yards to avoid obstacles are permitted. Any attempt to combine a frontal attack with an envelopment usually results only in an uncoordinated assault and brings conflict between the two friendly forces.

j. Signal communication.—The company commander must insure that he knows the method or methods of calling for supporting fires to be put down and lifted. If possible, duplicate means such as pyrotechnics and radiotelephones are provided. The following signals, in particular, should be well understood: objective taken; put down protective fires around objective; lift protective fires.

■ 35. CONDUCT OF NIGHT ATTACK.—*a. Advance.*—(1) The advance is made in compact columns until close to the enemy. A silent, stealthy advance is essential to secrecy.

(2) The leader of each column marches at its head. The company commander marches where he can best control and regulate the advance. A noncommissioned officer marches at the rear of each column to prevent straggling and enforce instructions for maintaining secrecy. Column leaders and the company commander constantly check on maintenance of direction and contact.

(3) Each column leader is preceded at the limit of visibility by scouts or a small patrol. It is desirable that men who speak the enemy language march with the leading scouts or patrols or with the column leader. At the end of each bound, the scouts or patrols reconnoiter for the next advance, while leaders verify or reestablish contact, intervals, and direction. Contact is made by designated personnel moving from flank columns to the center column or vice versa. The advance is resumed on the company commander's order, transmitted by messengers or by sound signals. If a hostile sentinel challenges, answer is made in the enemy language (if possible); the scouts or members of the leading patrol close in with the bayonet. Designated men at the head of the column may assist the scouts or patrols; and the rest of the troops lie down. The company commander must prevent firing by the enemy from bringing on a premature assault.

(4) Action of hostile patrols or outguards may force all or part of the company to deploy as skirmishers prior to the time planned. Elements forced to deploy reform in column after the resistance has been reduced. Remaining elements of the company are halted during such periods or continue movement to the next planned halt and await orders.

(5) Units which lose contact with adjacent units seek to regain contact while continuing to press forward to their own objectives.

b. Assault.—Deployment may be forced by the enemy opening fire at close range; it may be executed on arrival at a prescribed terrain position or on the order of the company commander. Platoon leaders acknowledge receipt of such orders. The deployment must be completed rapidly; any prolonged halt at this stage of the attack increases the chances of detection. The advance is then continued at a walk unless unusual visibility enables a more rapid pace to be assumed. Every effort must be made to maintain the skirmish line and prevent breaking up into isolated groups. When resistance is encountered, the attacking personnel launch the final assault. Aggressive leadership by officers and noncommissioned officers is essential.

c. Action after capture of objective.—Reorganization begins as soon as the objective is captured. Security measures

must be taken. An adequate support must be available by daylight to repel counterattacks. Supporting weapons are brought up, men dig in, and all other possible preparations are made to defend the position against hostile counterattacks at daylight. When the attack is to be continued after daylight, preparations are made to continue the attack. During darkness, the weapons platoon elements can determine only approximate positions and observation posts; they select and occupy their firing positions at dawn.

■ 36. NIGHT INFILTRATION.—*a.* Prior to a daylight attack by a larger force—or during a pursuit—the rifle company, or any of its elements, may be directed to infiltrate through the hostile forward elements at night in order to reach an assembly area within the hostile area before daylight. The mission will usually be to launch an attack at daylight against the rear of the hostile defensive position or to attack and disrupt his command, communication, and supply facilities. During defensive operations similar missions may be assigned for the purpose of hampering the hostile attack or pursuit.

b. The reconnaissance and other preparations to be made in daylight are similar to those for a night attack. When extensive gaps exist between hostile forward elements it may be possible for the entire unit to move together; the movement is then conducted in a manner similar to the advance in a night attack except that the formation is frequently a single column. Every effort is made to avoid contact with hostile patrols or security elements. When only small gaps exist, the movement must be made by small groups advancing over separate routes. The assembly area (or rallying point) selected must be easily recognizable in darkness and all members of each group should be thoroughly acquainted with its appearance and location, preferably from visual observation and a study of aerial photographs. After a study of the ground, maps, and aerial photographs, the route or routes to be followed should be carefully selected to take advantage of landmarks recognizable at night. Compass directions between landmarks should be determined in advance. Successful accomplishment of such a mission by small groups requires thorough training in night patrolling, use of the compass, and interpretation of maps and aerial photographs.

SECTION VI

ATTACK IN WOODS

■ 37. GENERAL.—For the general characteristics of infantry combat in woods, see FM 7–5, 7–40, and 100–5. This section discusses the rifle company in attack against the near edge of woods, the advance through woods, and the debouchment from woods.

■ 38. AGAINST NEAR EDGE.—*a.* During an advance over open ground to the edge of woods, attacking rifle companies may be under the observation and fire of a concealed enemy. Consequently they frequently attack at night (see sec. V) or under cover of smoke.

b. When the attack gains the edge of woods, it may be necessary for the company to halt and reorganize. Since the edge of the woods is a favorable target for hostile artillery and aviation, only a minimum time is allowed for reorganization. In planning his attack against the near edge of the woods the company commander must also plan his reorganization and advance through the woods. By so doing, he can reduce the time needed for subordinate leaders to redispose their units.

c. In his initial attack order, the company commander gives platoons instructions for their reorganization and includes provisions for patrols to establish and maintain contact with the enemy. He also makes provision for flank protection and the maintenance of contact with adjacent units. He gives platoons tentative instructions regarding formations, frontages, and maintenance of contact during the advance through the woods.

■ 39. ADVANCE THROUGH WOODS.—*a.* As soon as the necessary reorganization has been effected, the company commander promptly confirms or modifies his tentative instructions, prescribes objectives, and starts the advance. A magnetic azimuth is assigned each platoon and special precautions are taken to prevent loss of direction. The company commander and his command group generally follow close behind the center of the leading echelon. The rate of advance depends upon the degree of visibility within the woods; it must permit

contact with adjacent units. Periodic halts to restore contact and cohesion may be made at specified times, or on selected lines, as directed by the battalion commander.

b. Dispositions depend upon the difficulty of movement and the visibility within the woods. In sparse woods, leading elements may be deployed in line of skirmishers. In dense woods, a line of squad columns often is the best formation for the leading elements of the company. Scouts precede each leading unit, reconnoitering to the front and flanks. Rear units of the company ordinarily follow in platoon column. Connecting files or groups are employed whenever visual contact between units, or between units and scouts or patrols, is impracticable. Unless adjacent units are in close contact, constant flank security is imperative on account of the possibility of hostile surprise attack. Unless other elements of the battalion are following closely, protection to the rear is also essential.

c. Light machine guns can take advantage of clearings and gaps in the line of riflemen to deliver a large volume of fire at short range. They are retained under company control and follow closely behind the attacking echelon. The mortars are used whenever openings in the woods permit observed fire. A mortar is frequently attached to each leading rifle platoon because there is seldom suitable observation for effective employment of mortars from a central location.

d. When scouts or patrols encounter resistance which they cannot overcome, leading platoons immediately deploy and close with the enemy, employing enveloping maneuver whenever possible. Success depends largely on intelligent and aggressive leadership by platoon and squad leaders. The company commander directs such fire support by his weapons platoon as is practicable, and calls for heavy machine-gun fire when terrain and other conditions permit. He employs his support element as the situation requires. Assistance from 81-mm mortars and artillery is frequently limited by lack of observation and the difficulty of defining targets. The company commander, however, calls for their support when necessary and practicable.

■ 40. DEBOUCHMENT FROM WOODS.—The leading platoons halt short of the far edge of the woods. The company com-

mander sends reconnaissance patrols (see par. 158) forward to determine the location and strength of hostile resistance to the front, and directs that supporting weapons of the company be brought up. Reorganization of the platoons is conducted at sufficient distance within the woods to avoid hostile fires on the edge of the woods. The company commander promptly plans his advance to the next objective and issues orders to platoon leaders. He disposes the weapons platoon to protect the debouchment from the edge of the woods and makes arrangements for support by heavy weapons, or the artillery, or both. Terrain and volume and kind of enemy fire will greatly influence the debouchment—whether it is made by unit rushes or by infiltration.

SECTION VII

ATTACK OF VILLAGES

41. GENERAL.—Attack through villages and towns, particularly those in which the houses are close together, is generally similar to attack in woods, and the phases of the action are the same. Chief differences are:

a. Increased opportunity for detailed prior reconnaissance and planning, due to probable availability of aerial photographs and accurate maps.

b. Greater use of pyrotechnic signals.

c. Greater probability that targets upon which supporting fires are desired can be described with exactness, and consequently a greater probability of securing effective fire support from artillery and 81-mm mortars.

d. Maintenance of direction is easier; maintenance of contact and control is frequently more difficult.

e. Definite zones of action can be prescribed by assigning leading platoons one or more streets. Cross streets provide definite objectives near which halts can be made to restore contact and control.

f. Increased necessity for prompt mopping-up behind the leading echelon. The battalion may provide details for this purpose. If not, the company commander directs that his support mop-up such hostile elements as endanger his advance and report to his battalion commander the location of other hostile groups.

SECTION VIII

ATTACK OF RIVER LINE

■ 42. GENERAL.—For the general doctrines governing operations at river lines, see FM 7–5, 7–40, and 100–5. The company will usually cross as part of its battalion. It may be assigned as a leading rifle unit to cross in assault boats or as a reserve to cross on bridges or by ferry. This discussion deals with leading units. After receipt of warning orders the company commander reconnoiters the areas in which his units will operate. Upon receipt of the battalion order, he makes such additional reconnaissance as time and concealment permit. When practicable, his reconnaissance includes routes from the rear assembly area to the final assembly area, and from the final assembly area to the river bank.

■ 43. ASSEMBLY AREA.—*a. Rear.*—The company moves to and occupies a position in the rear assembly area as directed by the battalion commander. This area is usually beyond hostile light artillery range and within easy night marching distance of the river.

b. Final.—Final assembly areas are selected for each battalion crossing in the leading echelon. Frequently, final assembly areas are assigned to each leading rifle company, the companies of each battalion marching directly from the battalion rear assembly area to the company final assembly areas. Here the engineer crews assigned to individual boats join the infantry. The final assembly area is the point where assault boats are placed in readiness by engineers along the foot routes to the river for the final carry by hand to the launching area at the river bank.

■ 44. PLANS AND ORDERS.—The company commander completes his plan in the rear assembly area. He issues orders to subordinates in time for their detailed planning. If practicable, he takes them forward to the river bank to issue his order and permit their detailed reconnaissance on the ground. He plans the movement so as to provide as little delay as practicable in the final assembly area and no delay at the river bank. In addition to the data usually furnished in

combat orders the river crossing order will cover the following:

a. Location of the final assembly area, routes thereto, and hour of arrival in that area.

b. Method of march control to the final assembly area (guides, control points, etc.).

c. Allotment of assault boats to platoons or groups.

d. Formation for the crossing.

e. Objectives and missions for the respective platoons.

f. Time of crossing for each platoon.

g. Instructions for division into boat groups.

h. Instructions regarding supply, evacuation, control, location of company commander, and communication.

■ 45. MOVEMENT TO RIVER.—*a.* The movement of a company to the final assembly area may be made under battalion control or it may be under the company commander. Prior to leaving the rear assembly area, the company commander divides the company into boat groups. Tactical unity is maintained as far as practicable. Upon arrival of the company at its final assembly area, engineer guides meet the company and conduct groups to the boats. All subsequent movement to the river is under control of engineer troops. Groups march in column of twos in order to pick up boats without change of formation. The engineer guides lead groups to the boats, the boats are picked up, and the groups move on in silence. Each boat is carried by the infantrymen who will cross in it.

b. (1) An assault boat will safely transport any one of the loads listed below:

9 men with individual weapons and equipment.

8 men with one light machine gun and 20 boxes of ammunition (5,000 rounds).

7 men and one 60-mm mortar with 150 rounds of ammunition.

(2) The capacity loads listed are exclusive of two engineer soldiers, who assist in paddling the loaded boat, and who remain with the boat to bring it back across the stream for additional loads. For detailed loading tables, see FM 7–55.

c. Two engineer soldiers are habitually assigned to each assault boat as its crew; they guide and supervise the ap-

proach to the river, the launching and loading of the boat, and all movement on the water.

■ 46. *Crossing the Water.*—*Departures from the final assembly areas are timed to permit leading units to cross simultaneously on a broad front, but once these units leave the final assembly areas they do not halt and no attempt is made to maintain alinement between boats. Normally, there is no firing from the boats when the crossing is made under cover of darkness. No effort should be made to paddle upstream in order to counteract drift, unless the relative positions of landing and embarkation points and the nature of the current have led to prior orders to such effect. Alternate crossing points are designated for use by succeeding waves if required.*

■ 47. Formation.—The rifle company usually crosses with the three rifle platoons abreast. The weapons platoon and command group of the company normally follow as soon as the rifle platoons have reached the far bank. The company aid men are attached to one of the rifle platoons in the first wave.

■ 48. Action After Landing.—Platoon leaders select prominent features of the terrain on which to rally the boatloads of *their men* as they land. The river bank is cleared promptly. When landing in darkness, all men hold their fire, and as enemy groups near the bank disclose themselves by firing, they close with the bayonet. Rifle company commanders usually proceed with or follow immediately behind the leading elements. The weapons platoon follows the rifle platoons to the company objective, and emplaces its weapons to repel a counterattack and to support the further advance. As soon as the company commander has regained control of his company, he orders the resumption of the advance to seize the company's portion of the battalion objective.

■ 49. Antimechanized Defense.—Troops must be prepared to meet a counterattack, particularly by tanks, soon after their crossing. Antitank rifle grenadiers cover the most probable avenues of tank approach, particularly against the flanks of the company.

■ 50. ANTIAIRCRAFT SECURITY.—Higher commanders provide both aviation and antiaircraft artillery protection against hostile planes. Antiaircraft weapons remain silent until the crossing is discovered by the enemy.

■ 51. COMPANY WEAPON CARRIERS.—The battalion order prescribes the location of company transportation. Company vehicles may be transported across the river by float, by ferry, or may be driven over a ponton bridge after its completion. They should be crossed early in the operation. The rifle company takes a limited supply of ammunition in the assault boats.

■ 52. COMMUNICATION AND CONTROL.—Control during the crossing and advance to the company objective is mainly a responsibility of squad and platoon leaders. The company commander resumes control as early as possible. The company will reestablish communication with the battalion command post as soon as possible after the crossing is effected. The usual means of signal communication are messengers, radio, and prearranged visual signals.

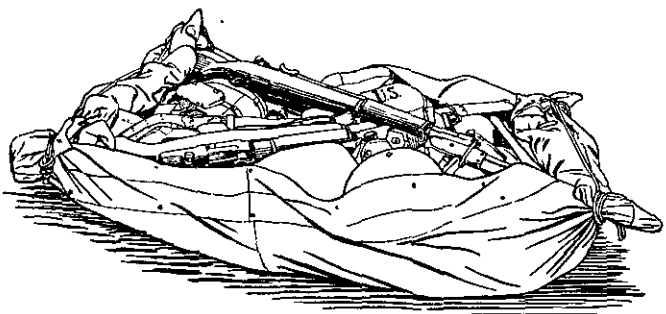
■ 53. IMPROVISED CROSSING.—*a*. Rifle companies as a part of advance guards and pursuing detachments frequently cross a stream or river by surprise, making use of the means at hand. This operation is usually executed under the direction of the battalion commander. The rifle company commander may order a crossing on his own initiative under similar circumstances. The doctrines and technique of crossing with improvised means are similar to those described for a crossing with standard equipment.

b. Crossing is accomplished by use of boats found in the neighborhood, or imperfectly destroyed bridges. Where no better means are available, the rifle company crosses by swimming and with rafts or floats made from its own equipment. All the combat equipment of a rifle company can be crossed with swimmers as follows:

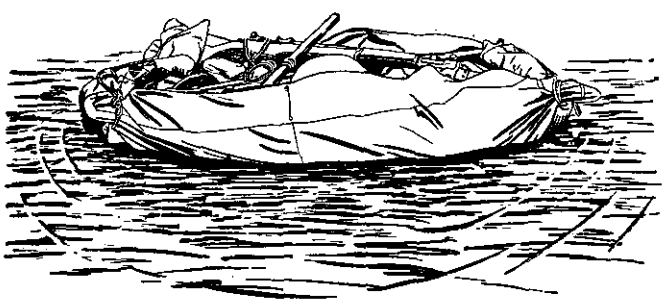
(1) The two-man rifle float can be prepared by two men in 7 minutes. The two shelter halves (one on top of the other) are placed on the ground, and the remainder of the two packs and the clothing of the two men is placed in the center. The rifles (crossed to give rigidity) are placed on top of the

packs and clothing. The float is completed by binding the four corners of the outside shelter half to the four extremities of the rifles by means of the shelter tent ropes. In a similar manner, using two 3-foot sticks or two shelter tent poles instead of rifles, a light machine gun, a 60-mm mortar, or two automatic rifles can be floated in a shelter tent. (See fig. 8 ① and ②.)

(2) Ammunition and other supplies vital to the initial stage of the operation on the enemy side are apportioned to the two-man teams and ferried across.



① Rifle squad equipment prepared for river crossing.



② Rifle squad equipment floating.

FIGURE 8.

SECTION IX

ATTACK OF FORTIFIED LOCALITY

■ 54. ATTACK OF FORTIFIED LOCALITY.—The attack of a fortified locality is a special operation involving special equipment, powerful means, and detailed preparations. The procedure is covered in FM 7–5 and 100–5. After a break-through has been made, subsequent infantry operations are conducted generally as in other offensive action.

SECTION X

RAIDS

■ 55. BY RIFLE COMPANY.—*a.* The rifle company as a unit will usually be employed only in a supported raid. (See FM 7–5.) The battalion commander will prescribe the mission, objective, and time. He may secure the recommendations of the company commander in prescribing the routes of advance and withdrawal and in arranging and coordinating the fire support. He will make the necessary arrangements for rehearsals. Other details may be prescribed by him or left to the discretion of the company commander.

b. After preliminary reconnaissance, the company commander must decide all details concerning organization, equipment, training, and conduct of the raid which have not been prescribed by the battalion commander. He organizes assault and support parties and designates leaders and missions for each party. The weapons platoon may be employed to protect the flanks; to assist in covering the withdrawal; to reinforce supporting fires; or to furnish carrying parties for captured material or guards for prisoners. In addition to the support parties for the usual missions, the company commander should plan to have one support party directly under his control in order that he can employ it against unexpected enemy resistance or counterattack. During the night, enemy reserve elements may occupy positions which were not occupied during daylight. These positions may not have been located. Consequently, the company commander must be prepared to deal promptly with unexpected resistance which may endanger the success of the raid.

c. When there are to be no preparation fires by supporting weapons, the company commander must carefully plan the time when he is to give the signal for protective fires which "box-in" the objective. This will involve determining just where his assault parties should be when the signal is given. If the protective fires come down too soon, the hostile garrison may be aroused, and if fires are delayed too long hostile supporting weapons from adjacent areas can bring effective fires on the raiding force.

d. Prior to the raid the rifle company commander and the leaders of his parties conduct secret daylight reconnaissance and at least one night reconnaissance. Orders for the raid must be detailed and complete, and must be thoroughly understood by all participants. All must be able to distinguish between pyrotechnics used as signals for withdrawal and those for supporting fires.

e. The raid is conducted as a night attack (sec. V) followed by withdrawal as soon as the mission is accomplished. The company commander, with his command group, places himself in the formation where he can best control the action and determine when to order the withdrawal.

■ 56. RAID BY ELEMENT OF RIFLE COMPANY.—The rifle company commander may be directed to stage a raid with a platoon or smaller element of the company. Such a raid may be supported or unsupported. (See FM 7–5.) The company commander will detail the leader of the raid and designate the unit to make it. Subject to his instructions from the battalion commander he will order the mission, time, objective, and routes of advance and withdrawal. When the raid is to be supported, he will arrange with the battalion commander for fire support. When time permits, he will arrange for rehearsals on ground as similar to the scene of the raid as can be located.

■ 57. DAYLIGHT RAIDS.—Daylight raids will usually be supported. There will usually be preparation fires by supporting weapons and smoke will ordinarily be used to protect the raiding force. In other respects the preparation and conduct of the raid are similar to those for the night raid.

CHAPTER 3

DEFENSIVE COMBAT

		Paragraphs
SECTION I.	General	58–63
II.	Front-line rifle company in defense	64–76
III.	Reserve rifle company in defense	77–85
IV.	Retrograde movements	86–90

SECTION I

GENERAL

■ 58. TACTICAL EMPLOYMENT.—*a. General.*—For the actions of the rifle company in approach march and in assembly areas, see paragraphs 12, 13, 14. For security missions on the march and in assembly areas, see chapter 4. For discussion of defensive doctrine, see FM 100–5.

b. Missions.—The rifle company may be employed to organize, occupy, and defend a company defense area on the main line of resistance, or it may constitute the battalion reserve.

■ 59. ACTION BY COMPANY COMMANDER.—*a.* Upon receipt of the battalion defense order, the company commander takes the necessary steps to formulate his plan and move the company onto the position. These steps include the following:

(1) Make a map study and tentative plan of defense.

(2) Provide for the movement of the company to the position.

(3) Designate the time and place for the issuance of the company order, and notify the personnel to be present to receive this order (normally the platoon leaders).

(4) Plan the ground reconnaissance and confer with adjacent commanders and battalion staff officers.

(5) Check the tentative defense plan by a personal reconnaissance of the ground.

(6) Complete the company plan of defense.

(7) Issue the company defense order to platoon leaders.

(8) Notify the battalion commander as to the company plan of defense.

(9) Supervise the execution of the defense order.

b. The requirements of speed and immediate action may frequently require the issuance of fragmentary orders and hasty occupation of a position without prior detailed reconnaissance by the company commander.

■ 60. RECONNAISSANCE.—The company commander's reconnaissance is as detailed as time and the situation permit. He first positively identifies his area. The reconnaissance then covers—

a. The immediate foreground of the position, to determine—

(1) Areas which afford the enemy close covered approach to the position.

(2) Natural obstacles and exposed stretches of terrain over which the enemy must pass.

(3) Commanding features of the terrain which may be occupied as hostile observation posts; and areas within the defensive position which will be exposed to hostile observation.

(4) Terrain features from which company observers can overlook the hostile approach.

b. The details of the ground within the defense area to determine—

(1) Coordination with supporting weapons to be placed within the company area, and coordination with adjacent units.

(2) Locations for subordinate defense areas (usually platoon).

(3) Location of the 60-mm mortars to cover with fire the approaches most dangerous to the position.

(4) Location of the company observation post.

(5) Location of the company command post.

■ 61. RIFLE COMPANY DEFENSE ORDER.—The company order should include—

a. Information of the enemy, including direction from which and time when enemy attack is expected.

b. Information of supporting and adjacent units.

c. Company mission.

d. Areas and missions of each rifle platoon.

e. Location and missions of the 60-mm mortars and light machine guns. The location and missions of the light machine guns are assigned by battalion and coordinated by the heavy weapons company commander.

f. Security.

g. Priority of construction.

h. Engineer tools, ammunition supply, and other administrative details.

i. Location of the battalion aid station.

j. Command and observation posts.

■ 62. AMMUNITION SUPPLY IN DEFENSE.—For ammunition supply in defense, see paragraph 201*d*.

■ 63. RELIEF.—*a.* The relief of a company on the battle position is preceded by a detailed reconnaissance of the defense area by officers and appropriate noncommissioned officers of the relieving unit. Company officers familiarize themselves not only with the disposition of the defending force but also with the known hostile dispositions on that part of the front. Arrangements are completed for the transfer of any supplies and special equipment to be left on the position by the company being relieved.

b. Usually, the company being relieved takes with it all individual and organizational equipment, but only the ammunition prescribed in the relief order. Emplacements, shelters, and latrines are left clean. Guides are detailed from the relieved unit to meet each platoon of the relieving company and conduct it to its position.

c. Secrecy in planning and conducting the relief is essential to its successful accomplishment. The relief should be made under cover of darkness, and at such time as to permit the relieved unit to be beyond artillery range prior to daylight. Incoming leaders inspect the position of each subordinate element as soon as occupation is completed to insure readiness for defensive action. The company commander of the relieving unit reports to his battalion commander as soon as the company is in position.

d. The execution of the relief takes place under the direction of the company commander being relieved; he remains responsible for the defense of the company area until the relief has been completed.

SECTION II

FRONT-LINE RIFLE COMPANY IN DEFENSE

■ 64. GENERAL.—*a. Mission.*—The mission of the front-line company in defense is, with the support of other weapons, to stop the enemy by fire in front of the main line of resistance and, if he reaches it, to repel his assault by close combat.

b. Dispositions.—A rifle company assigned to the defense of an area on the main line of resistance is disposed to cover the assigned front with fire, coordinate its fires with and mutually support the units on its flanks; afford close rifle protection to the supporting weapons emplaced within its area; and be able to offer resistance in any direction for the protection of its flanks and rear. Its subordinate elements are distributed in width and depth so as to be mutually supporting and capable of all around defense.

■ 65. FRONTAGES AND DEPTH.—*a. Frontages.*—The battalion commander assigns frontages to his front-line companies in accordance with the natural defensive strength and relative importance of their defense areas. Where a company occupies a vital area having poor observation and poor fields of fire, such as in heavily wooded, broken terrain, its frontage should not exceed 500 yards. Where the terrain is more open and affords longer fields of fire, a frontage of 800 to 1,000 yards may be assigned. Where the terrain is open and flat, or natural obstacles across the front render the area unlikely to be attacked in strength, the frontage assigned to the company may exceed this maximum figure.

b. Depth.—The distance from front to rear, between garrisons in successive platoon defense areas, should not exceed the effective range of rifle fire (500 yards). It should be great enough to insure that no garrison is in the zone of artillery fire directed at the next garrison to the front or rear (150 yards).

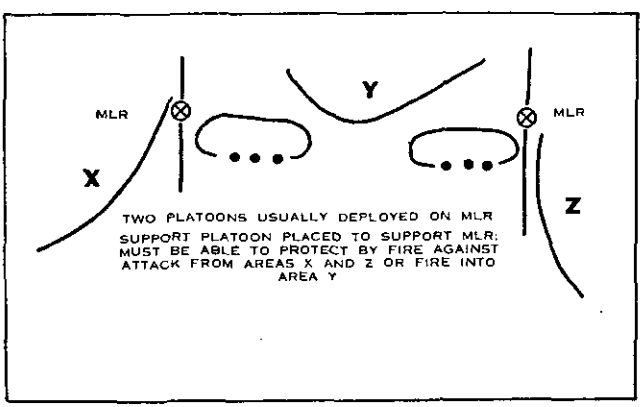
c. Boundaries.—The company defense area is defined in the battalion order by indicating boundaries, and limiting points on the main line of resistance (an imaginary line joining the forward edge of the most advanced organized defense areas). The boundaries define the company area of responsibility.

All defensive elements and installations of the company are included within its boundaries.

d. Limiting points.—Points at which the main line of resistance intersect the company boundaries are designated by the battalion commander and are termed limiting points. Adjacent commanders coordinate their defenses in the vicinity of these limiting points to insure that no gaps exist in the fires across the front of the position.

■ 61. DISTRIBUTION OF PLATOONS.—*a. General.*—(1) The distribution usually places two rifle platoons in defense of the main line of resistance and one rifle platoon in support. However, the tactical requirements of each situation must be evaluated and distribution of elements made accordingly. Exceptionally, when the area assigned to a platoon does not lend itself to control by the platoon leader, the platoon may occupy two defense areas with the platoon sergeant in command of one. Integrity of rifle squads is maintained. For schematic diagrams illustrating distribution of the company in defense, with two platoons on the main line of resistance, see figure 9 ① to ⑦.

(2) A hostile force during daylight makes maximum use of covered approaches to attack a defensive position; at night,



①

FIGURE 9.—Distribution of company in defense.

his advance usually is made over more open areas. Therefore, where a choice of defensive positions is available, during daylight platoons are disposed to block advances utilizing such covered approaches; while intervening areas exposed to hostile observation and long-range fires are covered by defensive fires—preferably those of machine guns. At night, platoons are disposed to block the open areas, covered ap-

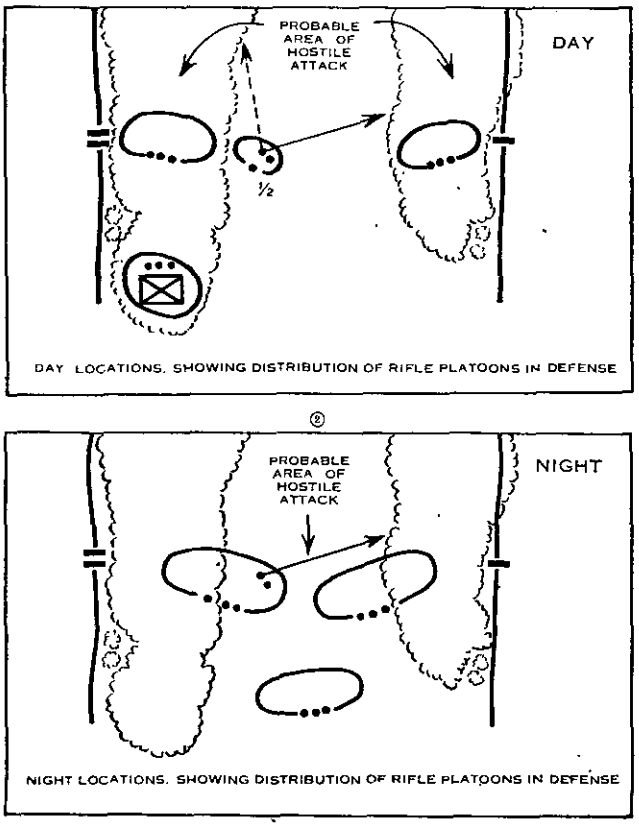
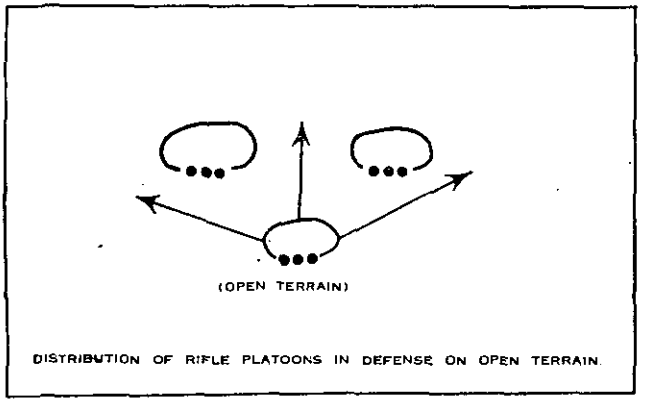


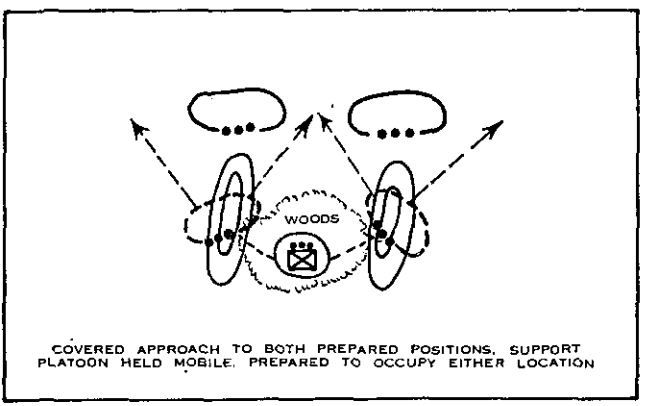
FIGURE 9.—Distribution of company in defense—Continued.

proaches being protected by one or more stationary flank combat patrols. (See fig. 9 ② and ③ and pars. 17*c*, 70*b*, 76*g*, and 157*f*.

b. Front-line defense areas.—While a rifle platoon will not ordinarily actually occupy a width of more than 300 yards, it is capable of defending a wider area by its fire. The width that can be assigned to a platoon will be dependent



①



④

FIGURE 9.—Distribution of company in defense—Continued.

upon the fields of fire, the obstacles existing in its front, and the supporting fires covering the area. Wide gaps may thus exist between minor defense areas provided these gaps can be covered effectively by fire and the adjacent units are capable of a mutual exchange of fires across their front. The responsibility for defending a hostile avenue of approach is given to one leader. Likewise, where possible, the approach

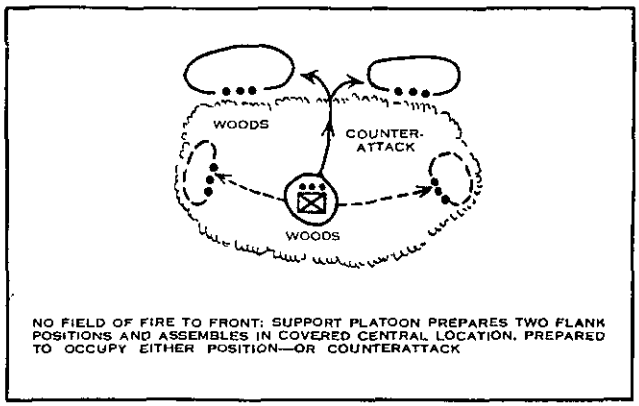


FIGURE 9.—Distribution of company in defense—Continued.

and the terrain blocking that approach are included in the defense area assigned to that leader.

c. *Support platoon.*—(1) The support platoon organizes a position from which it is capable of firing to the flanks of the forward platoon defense areas, in the gaps between the platoons, and within the forward areas in case they are overrun. (See fig. 9 ④.) It usually provides protection of the flanks and rear of the company area.

(2) If the terrain is such that the support platoon cannot accomplish its missions from a single position, and concealed routes for movement within the area are available, more than one position may be organized and the platoon held in a covered position prepared to move to either location. (See fig. 9 ⑤.)

(3) Where the open nature of the terrain will prevent such movement, once the fire fight has commenced, the support platoon may have to organize and occupy more than one defense area. (See fig. 9 ⑥.)

(4) Where fire support of the front line cannot be obtained, and suitable defilade and concealment exist, the platoon may organize positions in depth and may then be held mobile to occupy one or more of these positions or to counterattack to regain a forward area. (See fig. 9 ⑦.)

(5) The decision to counterattack or to occupy a prepared position is made by the company commander.

d. Weapons platoon.—(1) The battalion commander assigns the locations and missions of the light machine guns.

(2) The 60-mm mortars closely support the forward defense areas and are located to cover the most dangerous avenues of approach to the company area. When a platoon defense area cannot be effectively supported by mortar fire under company control, a mortar squad may be attached to that platoon. Otherwise, mortars are retained under company control.

■ 67. FIRE PLAN.—The company commander insures that the foreground of his area is covered by small-arms fire and that his platoon defense areas on the main line of resistance are located to facilitate the mutual exchange of fires. He contacts the commanders of the units on his flanks and coordinates his fires with theirs so that adjacent units are

mutually supporting and no gaps are left in the fires along the boundaries. He ascertains the locations of the prepared close defensive fires of the cannon company, the supporting artillery, the 81-mm mortars, and machine guns; he covers the gaps with rifle and automatic rifle fires and 60-mm mortar primary target areas. See paragraph 182.

■ 68. OBSERVATION POST.—The company observation post should afford a view of all or the greater part of the company defense area and of the approaches thereto. Observation to the flanks is highly important. The observation post is the battle station of the company commander; however, he is free to go where his presence is demanded. The command post is kept informed of his location. (See fig. 37.)

■ 69. COMMAND POST.—The company command post is located in rear of the organized defense area of the support platoon. It should be in defilade and concealed from aerial observation. Covered and concealed routes to the front and to the rear are desirable to facilitate communication with the platoon leaders and the battalion command post.

■ 70. ORGANIZATION OF GROUND.—*a.* The organization of the company defense area is limited only by the time and facilities available. In the absence of special instructions all men first dig standing type one-man foxholes. Maximum use is made of natural and artificial concealment and cover against both ground and air observation and fire. Special construction tasks, such as laying mine fields or constructing obstacles, may be allotted to the company. The battalion order states the order in which the tasks are to be executed. Work is conducted simultaneously on several tasks. Camouflaging, and other provisions for concealment, are performed concurrently with other work. (See FM 5–15.)

b. Organization of exposed areas subjected to intense artillery or aerial bombardment may have to be accomplished piecemeal during daylight by scattered individuals. If such procedure is impracticable, the organization of these exposed positions is postponed until dark.

■ 71. ANTIMECHANIZED DEFENSE.—*a.* The company takes advantage of all passive means of defense. Natural obstacles are

improved and antitank mines are used when available. Mines are covered by fire to prevent the enemy from removing them before or during the tank attack. The location of mines is carefully recorded and the next higher and adjacent units informed of the location. Guards are placed over antitank mine fields to prevent friendly vehicles running into them. In front of the main line of resistance, guards are withdrawn when the outpost or other covering forces withdraw.

b. Antitank rifle grenadiers aggressively seek to destroy all tanks or other armored vehicles that come within effective range. Rifles, automatic rifles, mortars, and light machine guns do not ordinarily fire at tanks. Individuals armed with these weapons take cover in their foxholes, slit trenches, or emplacements in time to prevent being crushed. They are constantly alert to engage infantry following the tanks and watch especially to prevent crews of hostile tanks from opening doors to throw grenades into the foxholes, slit trenches, or emplacements.

■ 72. ANTIAIRCRAFT SECURITY.—*a.* Dispersion, camouflage, and foxholes or slit trenches comprise the individual's best protection against aircraft.

b. When concealment is essential and is believed to have been achieved, no weapons of the force so concealed will fire at hostile planes. Weapons will always be sighted for such fires, however, and will open fire if the force is attacked from the air.

c. (1) When concealment is not essential, or obviously does not exist, all suitable and available weapons will fire on hostile planes. When both air and ground targets exist, each weapon will fire on the target which appears to offer the greatest threat to accomplishment of the mission of the unit to which the weapon belongs.

(2) In a defensive position, weapons on the main line of resistance will not fire at aircraft until it is obvious that the location of that line is known to the enemy. Weapons of units on the main line of resistance may be located initially in supplementary positions to permit them to fire antiaircraft missions.

d. The automatic rifles of the support platoon are located initially for the antiaircraft protection of the company.

■ 73. LOCAL SECURITY.—*a.* Whether or not the position is protected by an outpost, the company is responsible for its own local security. During daylight, observers are posted to observe the foreground in order to give sufficient warning of hostile approach to enable the company to man its position. If the planned routes of withdrawal of the outpost lead past the company area, these routes are included within the areas of surveillance of the observers.

b. Observation posts consist of single or double sentinels generally detailed from the support platoon. They are posted on the nearest terrain features affording the desired observation, generally not over 400 yards from the position.

c. At night listening posts are established on the avenues of approach. These are supplemented by patrols.

d. At least one sentry is on duty at all times within each subordinate defense area. At night double sentries are posted.

■ 74. HASTY OCCUPATION OF POSITION.—In the hasty occupation of a position, the first considerations are to get the troops on the position, to have them start digging in, and to provide for local security. The elements of the company and any attached weapons are located for the all-around defense of the company defense area. As time permits, coordination with adjacent units is accomplished.

■ 75. NIGHT DISPOSITIONS.—It is usually necessary to make certain adjustments at night to meet the conditions of reduced visibility. The decision to adopt night dispositions in case of fog or smoke rests with the battalion commander. For the rifle company, these actions include:

a. Laying light machine guns on final protective lines and 60-mm mortars on primary target areas. (See FM 23–85.)

b. Placing squads from the support platoon in areas that cannot be blocked by fire.

c. Detailing patrols to the front to contact the enemy and warn of his approach.

d. Establishing listening posts.

e. Illuminating the foreground by flares.

■ 76. CONDUCT OF DEFENSE.—*a.* During the hostile preparation fires, personnel occupying front-line defense areas take

cover in their foxholes, slit trenches, or emplacements. The hostile attacking force is not engaged by riflemen or other weapons occupying positions in the vicinity of the forward rifle platoons until the enemy is within effective rifle range (500 yards). Observers in each forward defense area keep the foreground under continuous observation.

b. As the hostile attacking forces come within range they are held under fire by weapons sited for long-range fires—artillery, mortars, and machine guns.

(1) Light machine guns may temporarily occupy supplementary positions for such fire in accordance with the battalion order. These supplementary positions must be at least 200 yards ahead or in rear of the forward defense areas in order that the locations of forward defenses will not be disclosed prematurely. A covered route to the primary gun positions must be available. Guns occupying supplementary positions for the initial fires are moved to their primary or alternate emplacements prior to arrival of the attacking force within effective rifle range.

(2) Light mortars located in the vicinity of the company support area execute fire missions within their effective range. Mortars emplaced in the vicinity of the forward defense areas withhold their fire until the fires of those defense areas are opened.

c. As the hostile attack comes within effective rifle range, all weapons of the forward defense areas open fire on appropriate targets to inflict maximum casualties and stop the hostile attack before it reaches their positions. Requests for supporting fires are made by the company commander or commanders of subordinate defense areas directly to the nearest observers—artillery, cannon company, or heavy weapons company. Requests may also be made by the company commander to the battalion commander for such fires.

d. If the attacking elements reach the area covered by planned close-in defensive fires, machine guns shift their fires to final protective lines and mortars fire on their primary target areas, while riflemen and automatic riflemen increase their rate of fire against the most threatening targets. If the enemy assaults. he is met successively by fire, grenades, and hand-to-hand combat.

e. If the enemy succeeds in penetrating the position, his advance is resisted by the company support, either by fire from its prepared position or by counterattack. The decision to counterattack rests with the company commander. To be successful a counterattack must be delivered quickly, before the enemy has a chance to organize to meet it.

f. In case the company becomes surrounded, the company commander makes such redistribution of any supporting weapons in his area as he considers necessary for its continued all-around defense.

g. When visibility has been reduced by fog or smoke, the battalion commander decides whether alternate night positions are to be occupied. (See par. 66*a* (2).)

SECTION III

RESERVE RIFLE COMPANY IN DEFENSE

■ 77. GENERAL.—The front-line battalion in defense frequently places two rifle companies on the main line of resistance and one in reserve. The battalion order prescribes the missions for the reserve company and the priority of these missions. The battalion commander controls the employment of the reserve company.

■ 78. MISSIONS.—Missions which may be assigned the reserve company are—

a. To increase depth of battalion defense area.—Where the key terrain of the battalion defense area is located in the rear portion of the battalion area, the position organized by the reserve company provides the defense of that locality. However, the position must be within rifle supporting distance (500 yards) of the support echelons of the forward companies. It should be at least 150 yards from that echelon, so as to be outside the zone of dispersion of artillery fire directed at the main line of resistance. Platoons are assigned and defend areas similar to those of front-line platoons. Fires and positions are coordinated with those of the heavy machine guns located in the battalion reserve area in order to prevent or limit hostile penetrations, to assure a cohesive defense, and to provide close small-arms protection for the heavy machine guns.

b. To protect flanks of battalion.—In case of a penetration in an adjacent area, the reserve company may occupy a flank line of resistance from which it can prevent the widening of the penetration and envelopment of the threatened flank or it may counterattack to assist the adjacent unit. Where the battalion has an unprotected flank, the reserve company is disposed to protect it.

c. *To counterattack.*—(1) The reserve company may be employed in counterattack to restore a portion of the position or to eject the enemy from a certain area. Plans are prepared in advance to meet various situations.

(2) The battalion order states the assumed penetrations against which counterattack plans are to be prepared. The preparation of these plans is the function of the reserve company commander.

(3) Counterattacks are planned to strike the enemy in flank with the greatest possible force. They are not directed against objectives outside the battalion area except on orders of higher authority, nor is the enemy pursued beyond the main line of resistance, except by fire. Use of routes of approach through an adjacent battalion area are coordinated with that battalion commander during the planning stage and at the time of execution of the counterattack.

(4) Supporting fires of all classes are planned, to include the fires of the weapons platoon, the cannon and heavy weapons companies, and the supporting artillery. Coordination of these fires is arranged with respective company commanders and the artillery liaison officer. These fires should be concentrated across the base of the penetration to prevent further hostile entry into the defense area.

(5) The counterattack plans are submitted to the battalion commander for approval. When time and other conditions permit, each plan should be rehearsed on the ground. As a minimum, the subordinate leaders are taken over the ground and the plans explained in detail.

(6) The counterattack is launched on order of the battalion commander.

d. To establish combat outpost.—All or part of the reserve company may be detailed initially to establish a combat outpost. For a discussion of combat outposts, see paragraph 98.

e. To assist in organization of forward areas.—Working parties may be detailed to the forward areas to assist in clearing fields of fire, erecting obstacles, laying antitank mine fields, constructing emplacements and entrenchments, executing camouflage, and performing similar tasks.

■ 79. WEAPONS PLATOON.—*a.* The location and missions for the light machine-gun section are included in the battalion order and coordinated by the heavy weapons company commander.

b. The 60-mm mortar section may be given initial locations and missions by the battalion commander in support of the main line of resistance. This will generally be limited to close defensive fires. The mortars may be emplaced so as to utilize fire data obtained from the observation and communication system of the 81-mm mortars.

■ *80.* OBSERVATION POST.—The initial observation post of the reserve company should be near the battalion observation post. The company commander must have early information of the situation within the battalion area and be in close touch with the battalion commander. Subsequently, the observation post is located to give the best observation of the area in which the company is committed.

■ 81. COMMAND POST.—The reserve company command post is in or near the company assembly area and close to the battalion command post. When the company occupies a position or makes a counterattack, the command post moves with the company.

■ 82. ORGANIZATION OF GROUND.—The priority of construction of the several defensive positions of the reserve company is stated in the battalion order. The organization of each position includes clearing fields of fire and construction and concealment of individual shelters, weapon emplacements, and obstacles.

■ 83. COMPANY ASSEMBLY AREA.—Within its assembly area, the company is held in platoon groups sufficiently dispersed to reduce casualties. Depending on the length of time the company expects to occupy the assembly area, it constructs

individual protection for its weapons and men. (See appendix I.)

■ 84. ANTIMECHANIZED DEFENSE.—When the reserve company occupies a prepared position, the doctrines of antimechanized defense for a front-line company apply. (See par. 71.) In the assembly area the antitank rifle grenadiers are disposed to cover possible tank approaches. A counterattack by the reserve company is not launched while there is still an immediate threat of a hostile mechanized attack.

■ 85. ANTIAIRCRAFT SECURITY.—Reserve company automatic riflemen are disposed for the antiaircraft protection of the assembly area. The assembly area also receives secondary protection from the heavy machine guns in the rear portion of the battalion defense area. When the company occupies a prepared position, the doctrines of antiaircraft defense for a front-line company apply. (See par. 72.)

SECTION IV

RETROGRADE MOVEMENTS

■ 86. FRONT-LINE COMPANY IN NIGHT WITHDRAWAL.—The battalion order usually prescribes the time of withdrawal, company and battalion assembly areas, and the troops to be left in position by each company as a covering force. Supporting weapons in the company area are usually attached to the company for the withdrawal to the battalion assembly area.

a. Preliminary actions.—As soon as the company commander is informed of a contemplated withdrawal, he initiates daylight reconnaissance by subordinates of routes of withdrawal as far as the battalion assembly area. The company commander limits the number and size of reconnaissance groups to a minimum in order to preserve secrecy. He prescribes the reconnaissance to be made by the platoons and by men to be used as guides in the night movement. The company commander contacts his platoon leaders by going personally to their command posts to acquaint them with his plan of withdrawal. He informs them of the time of withdrawal, the platoon assembly areas, the company assembly

area, and the strength of units to be left in position as part of the company covering force.

b. Company (less covering force).—(1) Rearward movement of front-line rifle units, less the covering force, begins at the designated hour. Individuals move straight to the rear to squad assembly areas where the squad leader regains control. Squads move to designated platoon assembly areas. Platoons move to the company assembly area. Small column formations which facilitate control are adopted. For initial and subsequent dispositions, see figure 10 ① and ②.

(2) Company transportation joins the company as far forward as the situation permits. The limit of its forward movement is prescribed by the battalion commander.

c. Covering force.—(1) The company covering force will usually consist of one squad left in place by each platoon of the company and such supporting weapons located in the company area as may be prescribed by the battalion. These are usually single guns left in position with skeleton crews. Transportation for supporting weapons is left with the covering force.

(2) For the night withdrawal a commander is detailed to command the company covering force. The time when he takes over command is prescribed in company orders, and will usually be just prior to the withdrawal of the company. During daylight the company covering force commander makes a reconnaissance to ascertain the exact location of supporting weapons to be left in position, and routes of withdrawal for the covering force. He contacts squad leaders to be left with the covering force and points out specific locations for portions of the squad. Some redistribution of squads in forward defense areas is necessary to provide observation over the entire defense area and close rifle protection for supporting weapons. The squad is retained in as large groups as possible. Not less than two men are placed in any locality. This redistribution of the squad should be accomplished after dark. Every effort is made to preserve secrecy.

(3) The squad left in the area of the support platoon is usually kept intact for local patrolling and ejecting hostile patrols which may succeed in entering the position. The command post for the company covering force is the old com-

mand post of the company. Sufficient messengers are sent to the covering force by the company commander to provide adequate signal communication within the area and with the battalion covering force command post.

(4) Prior to its withdrawal, the covering force should simulate normal activity in the company area. Patrolling is con-

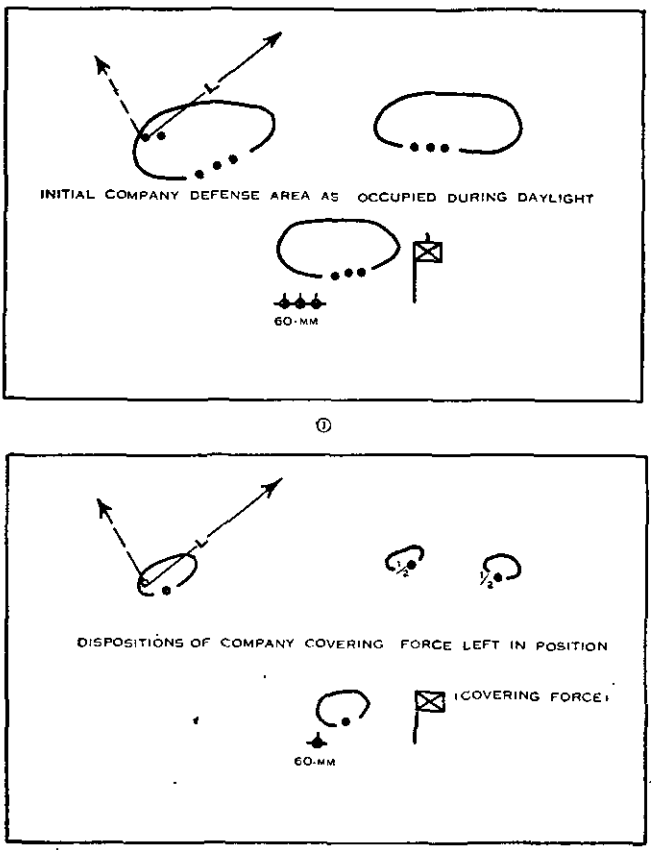


FIGURE 10.

tinued. All activities are conducted to prevent the enemy from detecting the withdrawal from position.

(5) The company covering force may be directed to remain in its position until a specified time or it may be withdrawn on orders of the battalion covering force commander.

■ 87. FRONT-LINE COMPANY IN DAYLIGHT WITHDRAWAL.—*a.* The daylight withdrawal order is normally oral, brief, and fragmentary.

b. The daylight withdrawal is a series of delaying actions on successive positions. Each echelon covers the withdrawal of the next preceding echelon. (See fig. 11.) The support

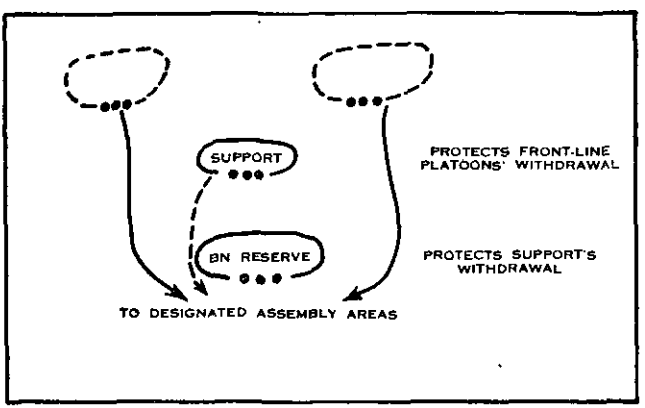


FIGURE 11.—*Front-line rifle company in daylight withdrawal.*

platoon covers the withdrawal of the front-line platoons. The battalion reserve covers the withdrawal of the front-line companies.

c. After withdrawal, front-line platoons move directly to the designated company assembly area. The initial withdrawal consists of a successive thinning out of the line. Individuals are sent to the rear of the support platoon area where a platoon noncommissioned officer assembles them or sends them on to the company assembly area. Automatic riflemen in each squad cover the withdrawal of their squads. As soon as the last elements of the front-line platoons have passed,

the support platoon similarly withdraws under the protection of the battalion reserve.

d. Supporting weapons in the rifle company area are normally attached to the company for the withdrawal. For the use of supporting weapons in daylight withdrawal, see paragraph 193*b*.

e. Withdrawing elements make maximum use of concealed and covered routes.

■ 88. RESERVE COMPANY IN WITHDRAWAL.—*a. At night.*—In a night withdrawal, the reserve company commander initiates rear reconnaissance as for a front-line company. (See par. 86.) The battalion order may prescribe that one platoon be left in position. This platoon is responsible for patrolling and protecting the battalion covering force command post.

b. In daylight.—In a daylight withdrawal, the reserve company is left in position to cover the withdrawal of the forward elements of the battalion. It withdraws in accordance with the battalion order under the protection of the regimental covering force (regimental reserve) or other elements of the battalion which have taken position in rear.

■ 89. DELAYING ACTION IN SUCCESSIVE POSITIONS.—*a.* Since delay in successive positions is based on limited resistance only on any one position the company may be assigned a frontage for such a position which is twice as great as would be assigned for a sustained defense. The company commander directs early reconnaissance by subordinates of successive positions and routes of withdrawal prescribed in orders of the battalion commander. The rifle company on a delaying position may deploy its three platoons abreast in order to develop greater fire power. Where one or both flanks are exposed, supports are held out. Close-in defensive fires are not planned; instead, the position is selected to favor long-range fires. A position near the topographical crest is generally of greater value than one on the military crest. The former position affords the unit defilade immediately upon the initiation of its withdrawal. Fires are opened at extreme ranges (rifles and automatic rifles, 800–1,200 yards) in order to force the enemy to deploy and to make time-consuming preparations for attack. (See fig. 12.)

b. Caliber .30 heavy machine guns and battalion antitank guns are usually attached to rifle companies. The antitank guns open fire at the earliest moment that promises effect against the type of hostile armored vehicle employed. Weapon carriers and prime movers are utilized in moving machine guns, mortars, and antitank guns whenever practicable. The rifle platoons organize their positions as for defense, and as completely as time permits. Protective trenches are dug and fields of fire are cleared.

c. The withdrawal to a rear position is made before the hostile rifle fire can pin the troops to the ground and before

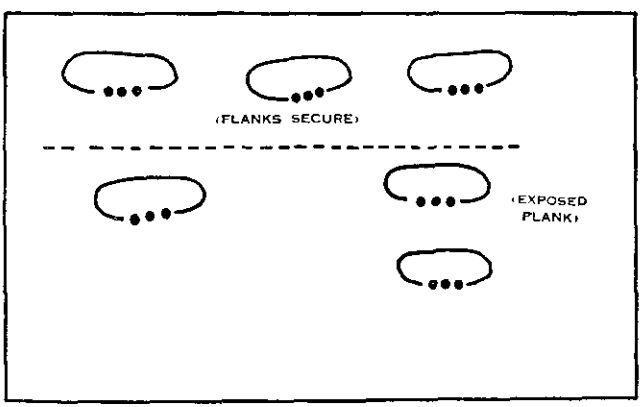


FIGURE 12.—Rifle company in delaying action.

the enemy can reach assaulting distance. The withdrawal may be effected by withdrawing platoons successively and covering the gaps thus created by the fire of supporting weapons; or by withdrawing platoons simultaneously, each platoon covering its own withdrawal.

d. Between the successive delaying positions, intermediate positions offering good possibilities of delay are occupied by detachments with automatic weapons. (See FM 100–5.)

■ 90. DELAY ON ONE POSITION.—The mission of delay may require a force to hold a certain position for a predetermined time. The rifle company assigned a portion of a sector on a

delaying position with this mission effects its distribution of troops, organizes the position, and plans its close defensive fires as for defense of a position. Increased frontages are obtained by allowing greater intervals between adjacent defense areas. Intervals between individuals in platoon and smaller defense areas are not increased. Intervals between adjacent units must permit mutual support by flanking fire. Mobility is sought for the support platoon in order to provide adequate support for the entire forward area of the company.

CHAPTER 4

SECURITY MISSIONS

■ 91. GENERAL.—Security missions which may be assigned to a rifle company include the following:

a. Support of an advance guard.

b. Support of a rear guard.

c. Advance or rear guard.

d. Flank guard.

e. Support of an outpost for a bivouac.

f. Part of a general outpost in defensive operations.

g. Combat outpost of a front-line battalion in defensive operations.

h. March outpost.

A company having a security mission is issued its extra ammunition before beginning the mission, and its weapon carriers usually go with the company except as indicated in paragraph 92*c*.

■ 92. SUPPORT OF ADVANCE GUARD.—*a.* When a battalion constitutes the advance guard, the leading rifle company will ordinarily be designated as the support. (See FM 100–5.) The mission of the support is to reconnoiter to the front and to provide security for the element following in its immediate rear.

b. Upon receipt of the advance guard order, the support commander prepares and issues his own order to his assembled subordinate leaders. The support commander's order usually contains—

(1) Information of the enemy and own troops.

(2) Organization of the support.

(3) Route and destination.

(4) Hour march begins.

(5) The distance at which the support is to follow the advance party.

(6) Special security and reconnaissance measures, including conduct at halts and responsibility for patrolling to the flanks.

(7) Conduct of the advance.

(8) Position of the support commander.

c. (1) The support marches ahead of the reserve in three groups from rear to front as follows: the support proper; the advance party; the point. (See fig. 13.) The support company sends forward an advance party which should seldom exceed a platoon in strength. The advance party, in turn,

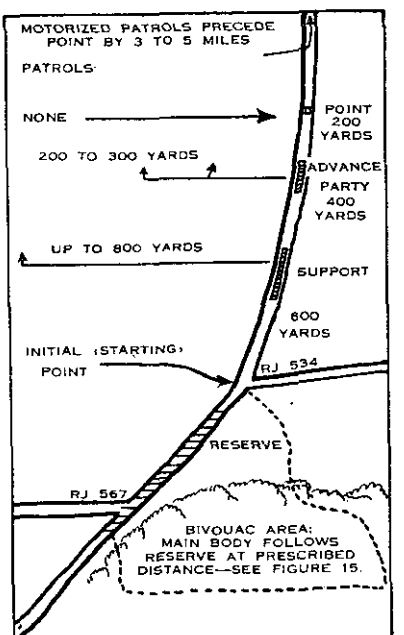


FIGURE 13.—Initial advance guard formation.

sends forward a point, usually a squad or half-squad. (See fig. 14.) Distances between elements of the support vary in accordance with the situation, the terrain, and conditions of visibility. These distances are sufficient to allow each succeeding element to deploy without serious interference from the enemy. However, the distances are not so great as to prevent each succeeding element from supporting the

element in front before the latter is destroyed. The following table shows average figures for road spaces and the average distances between elements for a support consisting of a rifle company for a march in daylight. This table is a *guide* only. At night, distances are considerably less than indicated in the table.

Element	Strength	Formation	Road space in yards (average)	Distance to next succeeding element in yards (average)
Point	Squad	Staggered	35	200
Advance party	Platoon (less one squad).	Column of twos (extended).	50	400
Support proper	Rifle company (less one platoon).	Column of twos	100	500

(2) The company weapon carriers will usually be under battalion control when contact is not imminent. When contact becomes imminent, they should be released to the company.

d. Contact between the support and the advance party is maintained by connecting files sent forward by the support.

e. The advance party is able to patrol, in broken country, to a distance of 200 to 300 yards to each flank of the route of march. Patrols to greater distances are provided by higher echelons. Foot patrols should seldom be sent to distances greater than 800 yards from the route of march. (See fig. 13.)

f. The support commander ordinarily marches at the head of the support proper; however, he is free to go wherever his presence is required. He informs the advance guard commander, by the fastest means available, of any new information of the enemy or change in the situation.

g. Upon encountering the enemy, the support commander promptly joins the advance party commander and, where the situation warrants, commits the support without detailed reconnaissance. The attack is launched *at once* in order to drive off the enemy or envelop his position. It is characterized

by *rapidity of decision and action.* If unable to drive off the enemy the support attempts to immobilize him by fire and sends out patrols to locate his flanks.

h. If the enemy withdraws or is destroyed before the reserve of the advance guard is committed, the support promptly resumes its advance, in a suitable formation.

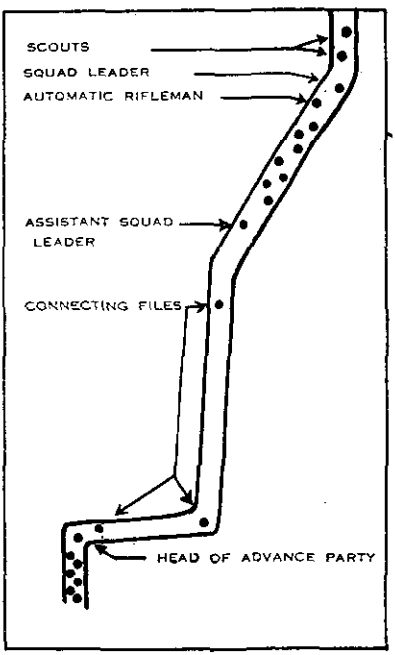


FIGURE 14.—Disposition of point and advance party.

i. During halts the support habitually establishes a march outpost. (See par. 99.) Each element also promptly posts observers at vantage points to the front and flanks to insure that hostile forces cannot approach undetected. The support commander coordinates the locations and sectors of surveillance of observers. The support will occupy terrain suitable for the execution of its protective mission.

■ 93. SUPPORT OF REAR GUARD.—*a. General.*—Rear guards are provided for the protection of a foot or motorized column, which is marching away from the enemy, and for the protection of the rear of a column advancing toward the enemy if attack or harrassing action is possible. Whenever

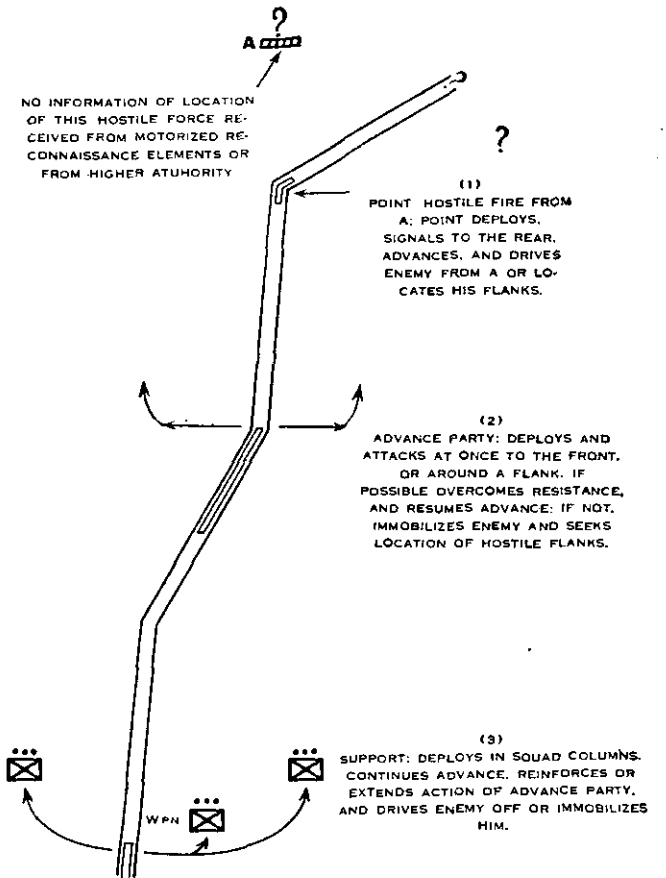


FIGURE 15.—Action of support of advance guard.

a rear guard is protecting motorized elements it is also motorized.

b. Retrograde movement.—(1) In a rear guard protecting a withdrawing force, the rear company usually is designated as the support. Its mission is to protect the rear guard eleprovided for the protection of a foot or motorized column which immediately precedes it in the direction of march.

(2) At a considerable distance from hostile forces a company having the mission of support of a rear guard adopts a formation similar to that of the support of an advance guard in reverse order of march. It is subdivided into three groups—the support, the rear party, and the rear point. The company usually details one rifle platoon to act as rear party which, in turn, details either a rifle squad or half-squad to act as rear point. The distances between elements of the support vary in accordance with the situation, the terrain, and visibility conditions, and correspond generally with the distances between similar elements of the advance guard. Except when enemy pursuit is close, each element of the rear guard follows the preceding element at a prescribed distance.

(3) When enemy pursuit is close, elements of the support effect such delay of the enemy advance as may be necessary to enable the next preceding unit to make suitable dispositions. Fire is opened at long range. Usually elements do not move toward the enemy to reinforce a subordinate element. The larger element occupies a delaying position to cover the withdrawal of the subordinate element which has become engaged. The element in contact with the enemy then withdraws under the protective fires of the element occupying the delaying position. The rate of retirement is coordinated with the main body and adjacent rear guard elements. In general, the combat action of a company operating as support of a rear guard in close contact with the enemy is conducted in accordance with the procedure described for delaying action in paragraph 89.

c. In an advance.—When the transportation of the main body is moving at the tail of the main body, the rear guard for the advancing column is motorized and moves by bounds behind it. While moving, the support adopts the same relative formation as if on foot, except that distances between

elements are measured in time rather than in yards. The average time distances are: rear point to rear party—two minutes; rear party to support—four minutes. These time distances are subject to the same general variations as are indicated above for yardage distances for foot elements. When the transportation of the main body halts at the termination of a bound, the rear support halts, dismounts, and forms a march outpost.

■ 94. COMPANY AS ADVANCE OR REAR GUARD.—When the rifle company operates as an advance or rear guard of a small force, the reserve is omitted. The company disposes its elements and conducts its actions as does a rifle company acting as the support of a larger advance or rear guard. It may have supporting weapons attached.

■ 95. FLANK GUARD.—*a. General.*—(1) A rifle company may be detailed to protect the flank of a marching column. When so detailed the company commander is given definite instructions as to what he is to do, and when and for how long it is to be done. When practicable, this company should be reinforced with antitank weapons, with portable radiotelephones, and with a sufficient number of motors to facilitate rapid communication with the unit detailing the flank guard. Such a security force may be dismounted or motorized. Since roads are the most dangerous avenues of approach for the initial attack by a hostile force, the company commander attempts to block these primarily; other avenues of approach also are covered.

(2) In case of attack, the main body commander is immediately notified and the flank guard delays the advance of the enemy until the main body can prepare for action or until the tail of the column passes a designated point. For other details, see FM 7–5, 7–20, 7–40, and 100–5.

b. Occupying simultaneously a series of flank positions.—(1) The company generally will occupy these positions in advance of the march of the main body. Preferably the company should be motorized to enable it to form a number of motorized detachments, each blocking an avenue of approach. A strong supporting element should be retained in a central location so that any detachment can be reinforced.

As the tail of the main body approaches a point on the route from which elements on the second position provide adequate flank protection, the first detachment should be moved rapidly to a previously reconnoitered location to the front. (See fig. 16.) This procedure is continued; the detachments remain in position until the main body has passed a point approximately opposite their positions, after which they move to designated positions ahead of and to the flank of the leading elements of the marching column.

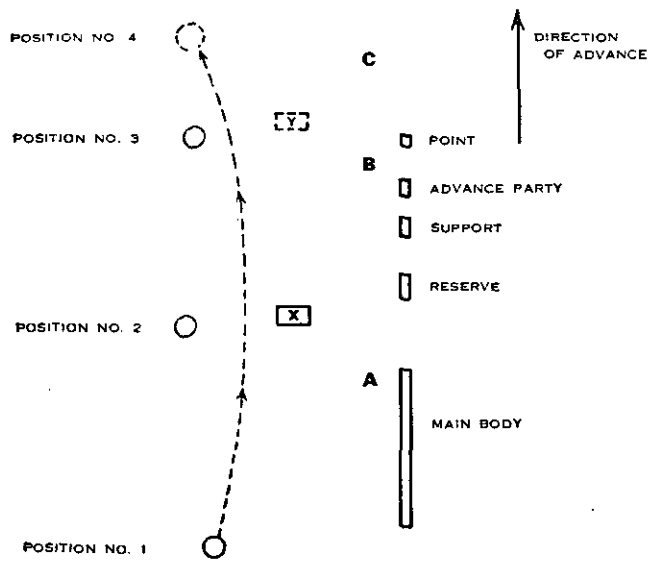


FIGURE 16.—Schematic diagram showing employment of flank guard occupying simultaneously a series of flank positions.

NOTES.—1. Detachment No. 1 moves to position No. 4 when tail of main body reaches A.
2. Detachment No. 2 moves to position No. 5 (not shown) when tail of main body reaches B.
3. Detachment No. 3 moves to position No. 6 (not shown) when tail of main body reaches C.
4. Support at X remains near center detachment location; with an inadequate road net, support at X (Y) may be omitted and detachments are correspondingly reinforced in strength and number.

(2) In occupying simultaneously a series of flank positions, road blocks are established. Demolitions may be accomplished, and small detachments are posted to cover them with fire. Rifle antitank grenades or antitank guns (if attached) are used to attack hostile armored vehicles.

(3) When the company is operating on foot it may be reassembled after the tail of the main body has passed a prescribed location or at a specified time. The company rejoins the main body at the earliest practicable time.

c. Occupying a single flank position.—If there is only a single avenue of approach from a threatened flank, the company commander is directed to move to a single key position, the possession of which will afford the necessary protection to the main body. This key terrain feature may be defended until the mission is accomplished, or utilized as an initial delaying position.

d. Moving on a parallel route.—If moving on a parallel route, the company commander provides for local security of the company by employing an advance and a rear guard, and by extensive use of flank patrols. Contact with the main body is maintained by patrols sent to points of observation, and by motor messenger, or radiotelephone, if available.

■ 96. SUPPORT OF OUTPOST FOR BIVOUAC.—*a. General.*—(1) A rifle company detailed as a support of an outpost for a bivouac is assigned an area on the outpost line of resistance and a sector of surveillance. The mission of the outpost is to provide time for the main force to prepare for combat. Fire is opened at long range and the enemy is held under constant fire as he approaches the position. The support is prepared for close combat. When the support has been assigned a delaying mission, it withdraws along previously reconnoitered routes to an intermediate delaying position or as may be directed by the outpost commander.

(2) Support areas on the outpost line of resistance are numbered from right to left. Heavy machine guns and other supporting weapons may be attached to the company. The company adopts a suitable formation to protect its movement to the outpost position and provide for its own security. For other details see FM 7–5, 7–20, 7–40, and 100–5.

b. Preliminary orders.—Upon receipt of orders, the company commander makes a map reconnaissance, informs his second-in-command as to his tentative plan, and issues specific instructions as to where the company is to be moved.

c. Reconnaissance.—(1) If practicable, the company commander precedes his unit to its assigned area and makes a detailed reconnaissance. Frequently enemy interference, or the threat thereof, will require him to make his reconnaissance under the protection of the march outpost.

(2) He confers with the march outpost commander as to the situation and the terrain. As soon as contact can be made, he also confers with commanders of adjacent supports. During his reconnaissance, the company commander determines locations and missions for each platoon and for any attached supporting units.

d. Orders.—The company commander then decides upon his plan of organization and issues his orders to the platoon leaders. Frequently the orders are issued by message in fragmentary form.

e. Organization of ground.—The selected position should provide observation for long-range machine-gun and mortar fires and permit the organization of close defensive fires. The company organizes the position as for a defense on a wide front (delay on one position.) (See par. 90.) The unoccupied intervals of the area are covered by fire and, wherever practicable, by obstacles. Attached heavy machine guns are employed for long-range direct fire covering the approaches to the position. They are assigned supplementary positions for reinforcing the flanking fires of the light machine guns. Attached 81-mm mortars are located to cover defiladed approaches to the position. They are also assigned close support missions. Attached antitank weapons are sited to cover the most probable routes of tank approach. Immediately upon arriving on the outpost position the troops construct slit trenches or foxholes, clear fields of fire, and develop camouflage in a manner similar to the organization of a defense area on a battle position.

f. Conduct.—The company promptly covers its front with outguards and patrols. (See fig. 17.) Outguards, not exceeding the strength of one squad, occupy day positions (usually

within 400 yards of the outpost line of resistance) affording the most extensive views over the foreground. Outguards are numbered from right to left in each support area. At night outguards are posted so as to cover the most probable routes of hostile advance. Patrolling is greatly increased at night. Unless given specific missions, the patrols detailed from the support cover only their front and gaps between outguards. The support may be required to execute distant patrolling to the front and flanks, utilizing motors provided for this purpose. Stronger outguards (detached posts) are detailed to hold more distant features such as stream crossings, villages,

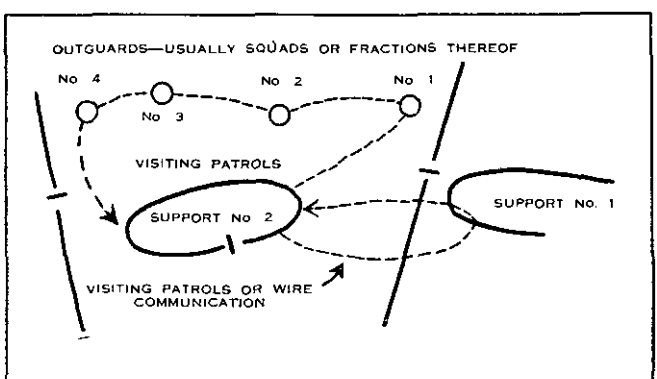


FIGURE 17.—Schematic diagram showing dispositions of the outpost for a bivouac.

and important road junctions. Communication with adjacent supports, between platoon defense areas, and between outguards is maintained by visiting patrols or by telephones. Patrols should go over their route during daylight.

■ 97. SUPPORT OF A BATTALION ON GENERAL OUTPOST.—*a*. The general outpost is divided into battalion areas. The battalion in turn subdivides its position into company areas. A rifle company occupying an area on the outpost line of resistance organizes its position and may be directed to conduct its action as for delaying action. (See pars. 89 and 90.)

b. The outpost order may prescribe that the outpost line of resistance be held a definite time or until other orders are received. In such case, the outpost organizes the position for protracted defense.

c. In the organization of ground, deception is stressed. Dummy emplacements simulating the organization of a battle position are constructed to deceive the enemy and disperse his fire. The company covers its front with observation groups (outguards) and patrols as for the support of an outpost for a bivouac. (See par. 96*f*.)

■ 98. COMBAT OUTPOST OF FRONT-LINE BATTALION.—*a.* A battalion occupying an area on the main line of resistance provides for its local security by posting a combat outpost. The reserve company, or elements thereof, may be assigned this mission. If a general outpost is in position, the combat outpost ordinarily consists of a series of observation groups placed to observe the approaches to the position. When the proximity of the enemy does not permit the establishment of a general outpost, or the contemplated withdrawal of the general outpost will uncover the battalion front, the combat outpost may be stronger. If the terrain affords good fields of fire and covered routes of withdrawal, battalion supporting weapons are attached to the combat outpost. The combat outpost line is designated by the battalion commander.

b. The combat outpost is organized as a series of outguards varying in strength from a half-squad to a rifle platoon. These outguards organize defense areas on positions affording observation and long fields of fire, and provide close rifle protection to supporting weapons. A support echelon may not be required, as the combat outpost ordinarily effects an early withdrawal. Since the distance from the battle position is short, there usually will be no intermediate delaying positions and the withdrawal will be made directly to the company assembly area. Outguards should be located within visual communicating distance of each other. If the terrain prevents this, contact is maintained by patrols and by telephones if they are available for this purpose. Patrolling between outguards is carried on during all periods of reduced visibility. Communication with the battalion command post is maintained by wire, radio, and messenger.

c. The combat outpost locates forward observers and sends patrols to the front and flanks for its own security. Fire is opened at long range and the combat outpost withdraws before the enemy reaches the area of close combat. The battalion commander is informed of the first approach of hostile forces, is kept advised of the hostile situation, and is notified when the combat outpost is forced to withdraw. The withdrawal is made along previously designated and reconnoitered routes. Front-line units through whose area the withdrawal is made are informed when the combat outpost has cleared their front. The battalion commander is notified when the combat outpost is assembled in the battalion area. When combat is interrupted by nightfall, battalions in contact immediately push forward combat outposts. In this case, the combat outpost sends forward patrols to gain and maintain contact with the enemy.

■ 99. MARCH OUTPOST.—The march outpost is the outpost established habitually by a marching unit making any temporary halt. It is established by advance, flank, and rear guards, and is generally formed by occupying critical terrain features controlling the approaches to the resting column, with *special* attention to the flanks. The strength of a march output may vary from a single rifle squad to a rifle company, reinforced with attached supporting weapons. Its size depends upon the size of the main body, duration of the temporary halt, nearness of the enemy and likelihood of early contact, and the nature of the terrain. When detailed as a march outpost, the rifle company receives specific instructions from the battalion commander. It then operates generally according to the methods prescribed for the support of an outpost for a bivouac. (See pars. 96 and 157*h*.)

CHAPTER 5

RIFLE PLATOON

	Paragraphs
SECTION I. General	100–105
II. Attack	106–110
III. Defense	111–126
IV. Security missions	127–132

SECTION I

GENERAL

■ 100. COMPOSITION.—A rifle platoon consists of a command group and three rifle squads. The command group consists of a platoon leader, a platoon sergeant, a platoon guide, messengers, and basic privates.

■ 101. DUTIES OF COMMAND GROUP.—*a.* The platoon leader is responsible for the training, discipline, control, and tactical employment of the platoon. It must be trained to accomplish its combat mission decisively and to function as an effective unit in the military team.

b. The platoon sergeant is second-in-command. He assists the platoon leader in controlling the direction and rate of movement in the advance. During all operations he takes post as directed by the platoon leader so as best to assist in the control of the platoon. He replaces the platoon leader when the latter is not with the platoon or becomes a casualty.

c. The platoon guide (a sergeant) prevents straggling and enforces orders concerning cover, concealment, and discipline. His position is usually in rear of the platoon, where he observes the situation on the flanks and rear. He checks ammunition expenditure and takes advantage of every opportunity to have ammunition replenished.

d. When the company begins its development one messenger reports to the company commander and one remains with the platoon leader. (See par. 8*b* (8).)

e. Basic privates are used as replacements.

■ 102. CONTROL AND COMMUNICATION.—The platoon leader controls the action of the platoon by oral orders or by arm-

and-hand signals. Communication with company headquarters is usually by messenger.

■ 103. ROUTE MARCH.—During the advance in route column, the platoon marches in column as directed by the company commander.. The platoon leader prescribes the order of march of the squads.

■ 104. SPECIAL OPERATIONS.—The conduct of a rifle platoon in special operations is similar to that in offensive and defensive combat. Details involving specific changes are prescribed by the company commander. (See chs. 1, 2, and 3, and FM 7–5.)

■ 105. AMMUNITION SUPPLY IN COMBAT.—See paragraph 201..

SECTION II

ATTACK

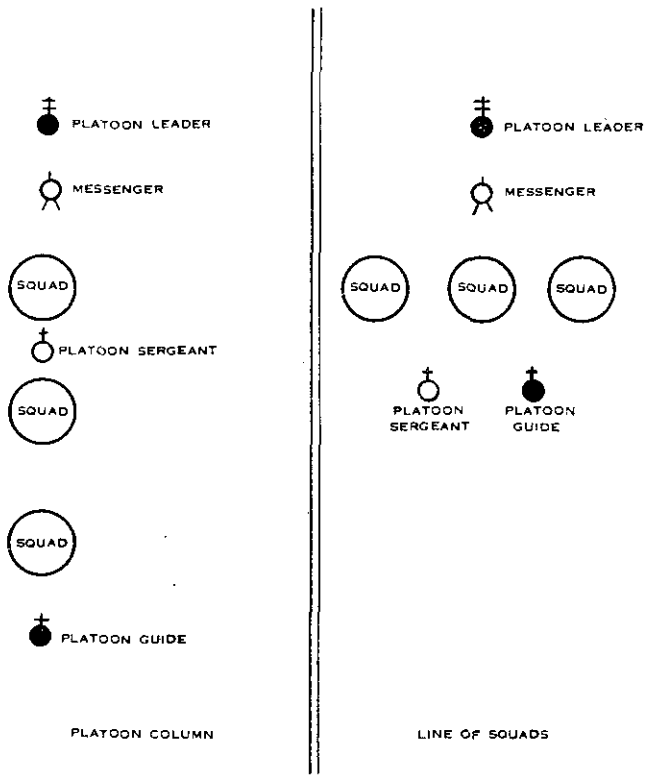
■ 106. APPROACH MARCH.—*a. Dispositions.*—(1) In approach march, by day or night, the platoon moves as a part of the company under orders issued by the company commander. (See pars. 11, 12, and 13.) The platoon dispositions most frequently used are shown schematically in figure 18 ① and ②: platoon column; line of squads; two squads forward, one squad back; and one squad forward, two squads back. The initial dispositions of the squad may be prescribed by the company commander; ordinarily, however, he allows the platoon leader to determine which formation best suits the ground and the hostile situation.

(2) "Platoon column" is vulnerable to fire from the front, and requires a change in disposition to employ the weapons toward the front; however, it is easily controlled and maneuvered. It is especially suitable for narrow, covered routes of advance, for maneuvering through gaps between areas receiving hostile artillery fire, and for moving through woods, and in fog, smoke, or darkness. The depth of a platoon column averages 150–200 yards.

(3) "Line of squads" enables the platoon leader to develop the maximum fire power to the front in the shortest time. It is more difficult to control, and lacks maneuverability; but it is less vulnerable to fire from the front. It is suitable for

rapidly crossing an area exposed to hostile long-range machine-gun or artillery fire which cannot be avoided.

(4) (*a*) "Two squads forward, one squad back" and "one squad forward, two squads back" are formations which provide security to both front and flanks, favor maneuver and control, and also provide flexibility in meeting new tactical



①

FIGURE 18.—Rifle platoon formations in approach march.

situations. The factors usually determining which of these formations is to be employed are the terrain, the frontage which the platoon must cover, and the proximity and actions of the enemy.

(*b*) A formation with squads echeloned to the right or left rear may be used to protect an exposed flank and permits maximum fire to be delivered promptly toward that flank.

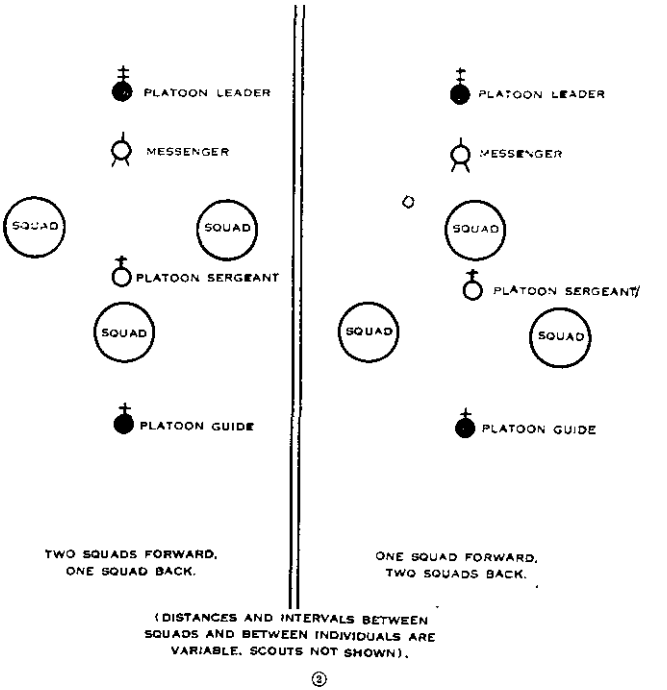


FIGURE 18.—Rifle platoon formations in approach march—Con.

b. Direction and rate of advance.—(1) The company commander usually designates a base platoon. He may direct it to guide on a specified element of another company. The platoon leader of the base platoon is responsible for the direction and rate of advance. A uniform rate should be main-

tained. The platoon halts only on orders from the company commander or when hostile resistance stops the advance.

(2) Each platoon leader designates a base squad on which other squads regulate their movements. He indicates the direction of advance by pointing or moving in the desired direction, or by indicating to the leader of the base squad the route, unit, or magnetic azimuth to be followed. Any combination of these methods may be used. The platoon leader makes minor deviations from his assigned route or zone of advance to avoid prominent points on which hostile artillery may have registered or other dangerous areas and obstacles. To escape observation in daylight, the platoon takes advantage of cover and concealment provided by ravines, draws, and woods.

(3) For night movement, unless the platoon follows another unit, the platoon leader usually reconnoiters in daylight and plots the route, by compass bearings, on a sketch or map. A circuitous route which follows easily distinguishable terrain features is often preferable to one more direct but less clearly marked.

c. *Contact.*—When a platoon follows another unit at night, contact is maintained by connecting files unless the tail of the preceding unit is clearly visible. In daylight, contact is similarly maintained whenever the intervening terrain makes visual contact difficult. The use of double connecting files increases the certainty of maintaining unbroken contact.

d. Movement to successive objectives.—In the daylight approach march the platoon is assigned an initial march objective by the company commander. When this objective cannot be pointed out to the base squad, movement to it must be made in a series of bounds to intermediate platoon march objectives. The platoon leader indicates each march objective to the leader of the base squad in time to prevent any unavoidable halt. The platoon leader precedes the platoon at a sufficient distance to reconnoiter the zone of advance. He detours the platoon around a heavily shelled area or takes advantage of lulls in the hostile fire to cross the area by rushes. The squads reform in a designated area as prescribed by the platoon leader. Gassed areas are avoided. Areas exposed to hostile observation are crossed rapidly, often in a single rush.

e. Action when enemy is encountered.—When fire is opened on any element of a platoon the remainder of that platoon, and adjacent platoons continue to advance toward their march objectives, taking every advantage of concealment and cover and assuring necessary security of their flanks. From favorable positions on the hostile flanks, they assist by fire, or fire and movement, the unit held up. In case of mechanized or air attack, action is taken as prescribed in paragraph 9c.

f. Zone of reconnaissance.—In a daylight approach march, the commander of a leading company assigns his leading rifle platoon(s) zones of reconnaissance. These zones may be 300 yards or more in width. A leading platoon covers its zone with scouts or patrols. Frequently it is reinforced by a 60-mm mortar squad. The platoon leader regulates the movement of scouts and patrols so as to insure security of the platoon against hostile fire from points within midrange (400–600 yards). This movement may be regulated in three different ways, depending upon the imminence of contact with the enemy:

(1) The platoon leader may hold the platoon under cover and await reconnaissance of the assigned march objective by the platoon scouts. When the scouts signal "forward," the platoon leader advances the platoon to the line of scouts and again sends the scouts forward to the next objective. This method affords the best security but is the slowest and ordinarily the least desirable of the three methods. (See par. 142*d*.)

(2) The platoon may be held under cover while the scouts are sent forward to the next objective with the platoon leader following close behind. When the scouts have reconnoitered the objective, the platoon leader by signal sends them forward to the next objective and signals the platoon to come forward. This method insures the security of the platoon by having it under cover until the next objective has been reconnoitered, but requires long and careful training to attain the desired speed and proficiency.

(3) The platoon leader may direct the platoon scouts to precede the platoon at midrange (400–600 yards) while he follows behind the scouts. This method permits the platoon

to advance rapidly without being exposed to enemy small-arms fire within midrange, and is appropriate for an advance over terrain lacking suitable march objectives, for example, over level, open terrain.

g. Duties of platoon scouts.—See paragraph 142*d* and *e*.

h. Termination.—The approach march for the platoon terminates when the fire fight commences.

i. Preparation for attack.—When extra ammunition is issued and rolls are disposed of prior to or during the approach march, the platoon may attack directly from the approach march. Since this procedure affords little opportunity for reconnaissance and coordination of plans, it is adopted only when the situation demands an immediate attack. Otherwise, the platoon halts in a designated portion of the company assembly area. Here, while the platoon and higher commanders make their reconnaissances and issue orders, extra ammunition is issued, rolls (if not previously disposed of) are dropped, and the men prepare for the attack. The platoon leader requires that each man's physical condition, ammunition, and equipment is checked by his immediate superior, and, if time permits, personally supervises this inspection.

■ 107. RECONNAISSANCE, PLANS, AND ORDERS.—*a. General.*—The company order prescribes whether a platoon is to be initially in the attacking (leading) or support echelon. If his platoon is in the attacking echelon, the platoon leader is given a line or area of departure, a direction of attack, and a specific terrain objective to be captured. For details concerning the support platoon, see paragraph 110.

b. Reconnaissance.—Upon receipt of the company attack order, the leader of a platoon assigned to the attacking echelon makes the necessary preparations to have his platoon ready to attack in conformity with the company order. His reconnaissance is so arranged as to permit him and his noncommissioned officers to reconnoiter the terrain prior to the attack. This may frequently require the movement forward of the platoon while the platoon leader and his subordinate leaders are reconnoitering and the attack orders are being issued. During his reconnaissance the platoon leader formulates his plan of attack.

c. Plan of attack.—(1) In the brief time available for planning his attack, the platoon leader must consider the following items:

(*a*) The terrain as it affords the enemy observation and fields of fire against his own and nearby friendly troops, and concealment from which to launch surprise counterattacks. Since his knowledge of the enemy's strength and exact dispositions usually will be incomplete or even nonexistent, he must determine not only where enemy guns and men are located but also where others might reasonably be located.

(*b*) The terrain as it affords opportunity for the movement of his squads. He endeavors to locate a favorable approach (ditch, wooded draw, brush) leading toward, or past, his objective.

(*c*) The situation on his flanks. He must determine whether his flanks will be exposed, or protected, by the location or action of friendly troops.

(*d*) The localities where smoke or supporting fires, to be provided by higher units, are to be placed.

(*e*) The localities where he must be prepared to place the fire of his rifles and automatic rifles (and of any attached mortars or light machine guns) in order to coordinate their fires with the fires provided by higher units, and in order to support the advance of any part of the platoon.

(*f*) The terrain as it affords firing positions from which these fires can be delivered, and covered routes to these positions.

(2) The above items form a picture of the situation as it exists on the ground over which the platoon must attack. With this picture in mind the platoon leader considers possible methods of attack (see *d* below) and makes his plans by answering the following question:

"How can I use my weapons and men to best advantage in order to accomplish my assigned mission with the least practicable delay and with the fewest casualties?"

d. Methods of attack.—(1) Unless the platoon zone of action and the strength of the enemy immediately in its front are so great that all the platoon's fire power is required at the start of the attack, the platoon leader should initially hold one rifle squad in support as a maneuvering element.

When the attack is over open, level ground, or when the maximum fire power is desired initially, the platoon may attack straight to the front in line of squads.

(2) Frequently the most effective method of attack is to have a small group work close to the target under cover while the remainder of the platoon's attacking echelon attacks straight to the front. A few riflemen can often work close to an enemy position, without being seen, over ground which affords insufficient cover for a larger group. An automatic rifleman may be included in the group.

(3) In other situations, the ground and character of the resistance may favor an attack straight to the front with either two squads or a single squad, while the other(s) maneuver to a suitable position on the flank. From this flank position, the maneuvering squad(s) may assist by fire the advance of the other squad(s) or may close with the enemy.

(4) When the terrain and situation will permit, it is often desirable to attack against a flank of the enemy with the entire attacking echelon of the platoon.

e. Attached weapons.—When a 60-mm mortar squad is attached to a rifle platoon, the platoon leader employs it as described in paragraph 17*h*. When a light machine-gun squad is attached to a rifle platoon, the platoon leader employs it to reinforce the rifle and automatic rifle fires of the platoon in a manner similar to that described in paragraph 17*h*.

f. Platoon attack order.—Having decided on his plan of attack, the platoon leader issues his order at the previously selected point. He orients his subordinates by pointing out important terrain features within the area of operations. He informs them of any new enemy information; the company objective; missions of adjacent units; support by the company weapons platoon, battalion heavy weapons, and artillery; the platoon objective; and the hour of attack. He outlines his scheme of maneuver, including the initial and subsequent platoon objectives; the line (point or area) of departure for each squad; the mission or target(s) of each squad; and security measures. He informs the squads of the location of the battalion aid station and of his own position and expected movement. He makes certain that all

squad leaders understand his order, having them repeat it back when necessary. Upon receipt of these instructions, the squad leaders return to their squads and issue their own orders, and the platoon moves to the attack at the appointed hour or on a prearranged signal.

■ 108. ATTACK.—*a. Movement across line of departure.*—The movement of the platoon from the assembly area across the line of departure should be conducted so as to preserve secrecy for the attack. Scouts from the leading squad(s) precede the platoon to protect its advance; the formation is determined by the terrain and the likelihood of coming under hostile observation and fire. Before arriving at the line of departure, the platoon takes up its attack formation. The squads, however, continue across the line of departure in squad column or wedge formation and do not deploy further until compelled to fire on the enemy.

b. Conduct of attack.—(1) *Location of platoon leader.*—The platoon leader follows his attacking echelon closely. He goes wherever he can best observe developments and influence the action of his platoon.

(2) *Fire and movement.*—(*a*) When the platoon comes under effective small-arms fire, further advance is usually by fire and movement. The enemy is pinned to the ground by frontal (and flanking) fire, under cover of which other elements of the platoon maneuver forward, using all available cover to protect themselves against hostile fire. In turn, the original maneuvering elements may occupy firing positions and cover the advance of the elements initially firing. The platoon leader hits weak spots in the enemy position by having his support attack against the point of least resistance, or by maneuvering his support around a flank to strike the enemy with surprise fire on his flank or rear.

(*b*) When fire from other hostile positions situated to the flank or rear makes it impossible to launch a flanking attack against a particular area, an assaulting force is built up by infiltration close to the hostile resistance. This force is protected by the fire of the remainder of the platoon and of supporting weapons. One or more automatic rifles may be employed to neutralize the fires of the hostile flank or rear elements. For this purpose, the platoon leader may detach

the automatic rifle teams temporarily from one or more rifle squads. The position is then taken by assault.

(c) When opposed by weak resistance, the platoon drives rapidly ahead until the company objective is captured regardless of the lack of progress on its flanks.

(3) *Flanking movements.*—(*a*) The platoon is essentially a driving unit. Wide flanking movements by any part of the platoon are rarely practicable. However, maneuvering in the zone of an adjacent platoon is often the only feasible method for a squad or small group to approach the enemy position. A platoon leader utilizes such a route without hesitation provided it does not interfere with the action of the adjacent unit.

(*b*) When nearby platoons are advancing approximately abreast, and it is necessary to maneuver in one of their zones, the platoon leader sends a messenger to the adjacent platoon leader advising him of the contemplated action.

(4) *Contact with adjacent units.*—The platoon protects its flanks by providing connecting groups of two or three men on each flank to maintain contact with adjacent units. When a considerable gap between his platoon and an adjacent platoon develops, the platoon leader verifies the facts by personal reconnaissance. He reinforces the connecting group and reports the facts and his actions to the company commander promptly. (See pars. 17*i* and 157*f* and *g*.)

c. *Assault.*—The assault may take place either on the orders of the platoon leader or as a part of a general assault ordered by the company or battalion commander. The attacking echelon of the platoon works its way as close as it can get to the hostile position without masking friendly supporting fires (machine-gun, mortar, artillery, and sometimes aircraft). For a platoon assault, the prearranged signal for the lifting of supporting fires is given by the platoon leader. A general assault is delivered at an hour fixed by the company or battalion commander or on his signal. Frequently in the heat of battle the assault is started on the initiative of a squad or even of a few individuals. Wherever and whenever the assault begins, it should receive the immediate cooperation of every individual and unit within sight. When the assault is launched, assault fire may be employed on the defender's position in order to keep it under fire and prevent the enemy

from manning his defenses. For definition of assault fire see paragraph 146.

d. Advance through hostile position.—Upon capture of the initial objective, the platoon leader makes a quick personal reconnaissance and promptly issues his orders for renewal of the attack. A platoon in the attacking echelon does not delay its advance to clean up isolated points of resistance, but leaves them to be reduced by succeeding echelons. Every effort is made to press the attack without pause.

e. Reorganization.—(1) As the attack progresses the platoon leader effects reorganization as casualties occur. Leaders and scouts are replaced; ammunition from dead and wounded is collected and redistributed; a message is sent to the company commander stating the effective strength of the platoon and the status of ammunition supply. Prisoners are sent to the company command post. A squad greatly reduced in strength may be combined with another squad or its personnel distributed among the other squads. However, even a squad of 5 men, including a competent leader, an automatic rifleman, and a rifle grenadier, may constitute an effective fighting unit.

(2) Unless the attack is to be resumed almost immediately, the platoon should dig in to be prepared to meet a hostile counterattack.

(3) After issuing his orders for reorganization, the platoon leader makes a brief personal reconnaissance to the front and flanks to observe the area over which his platoon may be ordered to advance, in order to select the best available routes for moving his squads forward.

f. Resuming attack after reorganization.—When the company objective is captured, orders for the further employment of the rifle platoon will be issued by the company commander. The attack upon new objectives is made in a manner similar to that described for the initial attack. If other troops are used to continue the attack by passing through the platoon, any elements of the platoon exposed to hostile flat-trajectory fire remain in position and support the new attack by fire until it has progressed far enough to permit them to be assembled without extensive losses.

g. Action when halted.—When the advance of the platoon is stopped by hostile fire and the platoon leader has employed

all means at his disposal to continue the advance, he notifies the company commander. The platoon holds the ground it has gained and starts digging protective trenches or foxholes. (See fig. 19 and FM 5–15 and 21–45.) In the meantime, the advance of adjacent units may force the enemy to withdraw. The platoon leader watches for the first change in the situation permitting his advance to be resumed, and plans ahead so as to be prepared to issue orders promptly when such an opportunity occurs.

h. Antimechanized defense and antiaircraft security.—(1) Whenever the platoon is assembled, air-antitank guards are posted to give warning of the approach of hostile aircraft and tanks.

(2) The platoon leader advances his platoon through terrain containing obstacles to tank movement. He insures that exposed flanks and routes by which tanks could approach close to the platoon are covered by the antitank rifle grenadiers. For action to be taken in case of mechanized attack, see paragraph 9*c*.

(3) For security against air attack, rifle platoons and squads make the maximum use of concealment. They open fire on hostile planes only when their fire is not required on ground targets and the planes actually attack them, or have obviously discovered their location. (See par. 9*c*.)

■ 109. PURSUIT.—*a.* When the platoon reaches its final objective, the enemy is kept under fire as long as he is within effective small-arms range. Pursuit is taken up only on orders of the company commander.

b. The actions of a platoon during the pursuit resemble its actions during the approach march and the attack. Formations are changed as necessary to facilitate control and rapid advance, and to develop maximum firepower when the enemy resistance stiffens. Light machine guns and 60-mm mortars frequently are attached to rifle platoons for the pursuit.

■ 110. SUPPORT PLATOON.—*a.* In the early phases of an attack, the rifle company usually retains one or two platoons in support. The support echelon constitutes the company

maneuvering force. The missions which may be assigned to a support platoon include one or more of the following:

(1) To envelop, or attack in flank, points of resistance holding up the attacking echelon.

(2) To reinforce the attacking echelon by fire.

(3) To furnish security to the flanks (connecting groups or flank combat patrols).

(4) To assist the progress of adjacent units by fire and movement.

(5) To furnish protection against counterattacks during the reorganization of the attacking echelon.

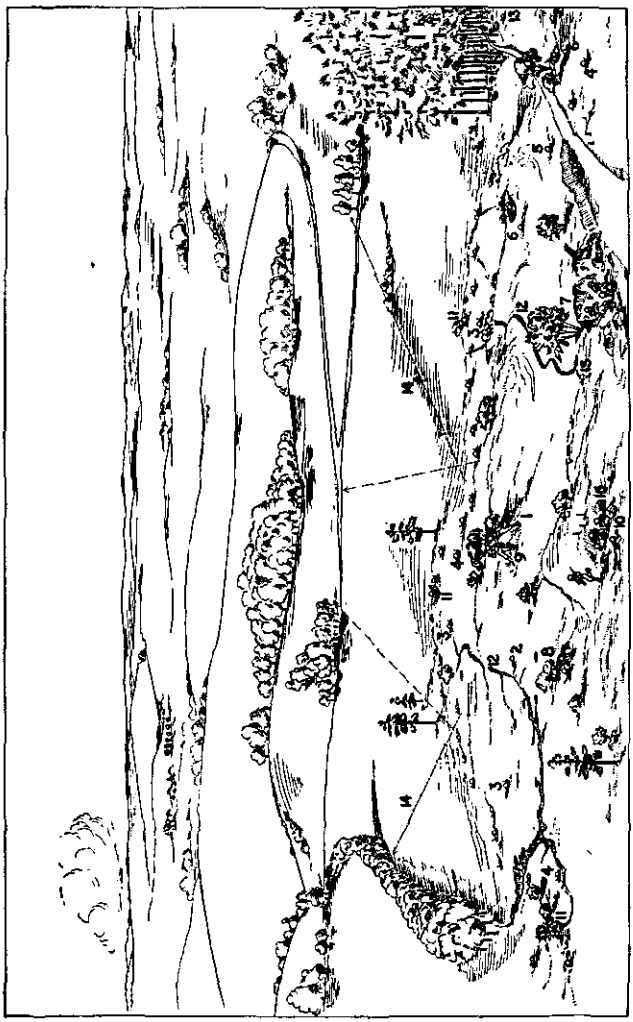
(6) To relieve a platoon of the attacking echelon.

(7) To mop-up a position overrun and passed by the attacking echelon.

b. (1) The support platoon advances by bounds in accordance with instructions of the company commander. It employs approach march formations until committed to action. (See par. 106*a*.) The platoon leader prevents it from becoming merged with the attacking echelon.

(2) During the advance the leader of a support platoon constantly observes the action of the attacking echelon and the situation on the flanks. As the situation progresses he makes tentative plans for the employment of the platoon.

c. A support platoon is charged with its own protection, and may be ordered to protect the flanks of the attacking echelon either by sending out flank patrols or by the occupation of positions from which it can fire or maneuver to the flank. It frequently is charged with maintaining contact with adjacent companies; connecting groups send information direct to the company commander. For the platoon leader's instructions to flank combat patrols and to connecting groups, see paragraph 157*f* and *g*. If the company commander does not prescribe the strength of the connecting group(s), the platoon leader makes them as small as practicable considering the difficulties of the terrain, the distances they are to operate, and the probable number of messengers required.



For explanation of numbers in illustration, see opposite page.

FIGURE 18.—Rifle platoon in defense.

SECTION III

DEFENSE

■ 111. TACTICAL EMPLOYMENT.—*a. General.*—(1) A rifle platoon of a front-line rifle company may be employed to organize and defend an area on the main line of resistance, or it may organize and defend the company support area. It normally occupies one defense area. When it occupies more than one defense area, each area is independently commanded and operates directly under the company commander. (See fig. 19.)

(2) The rifle platoon of a reserve company organizes a position in the reserve area according to the doctrines applicable to a platoon of a front-line company.

b. Missions.—(1) *Front-line platoon.*—The mission of the front-line platoon is, with the support of other units, to stop the enemy by fire in front of the main line of resistance and to repel him by close combat if he reaches it.

(2) *Support platoon.*—The mission of the support platoon is to assist the front-line platoon by fire, limit penetrations within the company area, execute local counterattacks, and protect the flanks and rear of the company.

Explanation of figure 19.

1. Platoon leader.
2. Platoon sergeant.
3. Sergeant squad leaders.
4. Corporal assistant squad leaders.
5. Light machine gun sergeant, section leader.
6. Light machine gun corporal, squad leaders.
7. Light machine gun ammunition bearers.
8. Messengers.
9. Observer, 60-mm mortar squad—beside platoon leader.
10. 60-mm mortar with crew—gunner, assistant gunner, and ammunition bearer.
11. Automatic riflemen.
12. Ditch used as a covered route to individual supplementary foxholes so as to provide for defense to the rear.
13. Adjacent defense area.
14. Squad sector of fire—center squad; inner flanks of other squads indicated by broken lines.
15. Platoon guide.
16. Cache dug to serve as protection for mortar ammunition.

■ 112. ACTION BY PLATOON LEADER.—Upon receipt of the company defense order, the platoon leader takes such of the steps described in paragraph 59 as apply to a platoon.

■ 113. RECONNAISSANCE.—The method of reconnaissance described in paragraph 60 for the company commander is used insofar as it pertains to the rifle platoon. During the reconnaissance, the platoon leader contacts leaders of supporting weapon units on the ground before determining final locations for rifle squads and for any attached mortars.

■ 114. PLATOON DEFENSE ORDER.—The order should include:

a. Information of enemy, including probable direction and time of enemy attack.

b. Information of supporting and adjacent units.

c. Platoon mission.

d. Location and missions of each squad, to include locations and principle missions for the automatic riflemen and antitank rifle grenadiers.

e. Location and missions (primary and secondary target areas) of any attached 60-mm mortar(s).

f. Security.

g. Priority of construction.

h. Ammunition supply, battalion aid station, and other pertinent administrative details.

i. Command post.

■ 115. AMMUNITION SUPPLY.—See paragraph 201.

■ 116. FRONTAGES.—The company commander assigns frontages in his front-line platoons in accordance with the natural defensive strength and relative importance of their defense areas. Where a platoon occupies a vital area having poor observation and poor fields of fire, such as in heavily wooded or broken terrain, the frontage of its area should not exceed 250 yards. Where the area is more open and affords longer fields of fire, a frontage of 400 to 500 yards may be assigned. Where the terrain is open and flat, or an obstacle across the front renders the area unlikely to be attacked, the frontage assigned to the platoon may exceed this figure. The area physically occupied by the platoon usually will not exceed 300

yards. The platoon covers by fire that part of its front that is not occupied.

■ 117. DISTRIBUTION OF SQUADS.—*a. Front-line platoon.*—(1) A platoon occupying an area on the main line of resistance disposes the rifle squads to cover the front of the platoon area, the intervals on the flanks, and to furnish mutually supporting fires with adjacent platoons. Where the assigned frontage is so narrow that there are few or no gaps between platoons, the rifle squads may be located generally abreast. When occupying an area with a wider frontage, better fire to the flank and mutual fire support with adjacent platoons are obtained by drawing back the flanks. The exact trace of the platoon dispositions is coordinated with supporting weapons located in its area. This coordination provides the best fields of fire for all weapons. (See fig. 19.)

(2) The automatic riflemen and antitank rifle grenadiers normally remain with their squads.

(3) If a 60-mm mortar is attached, it is located in suitable defilade within arm-and-hand signaling distance (100 yards) of the observer, and is sited to cover the most dangerous covered approaches to the platoon area. The mortar observer posts himself within signaling distance of the platoon leader.

(4) Supplementary positions for all-around defense to the flanks and rear are constructed and provision is made for shifting part of the platoon to these positions. They should be located as close to the forward positions as the terrain permits. On flat terrain riflemen can shift their fire to the rear from their primary individual emplacements. Wherever possible, natural cover, drainage lines, ditches, and other defilade are used for movement to supplementary positions.

b. Support platoon.—(1) The support platoon organizes its position in a manner similar to a front-line platoon occupying a wide frontage. It may be required to organize more than one position and then be held mobile in an assembly area, ready to occupy either its prepared position or to counterattack. The general location of the assembly area is prescribed by the company commander. It must afford cover and concealment and be readily accessible to the areas where the platoon is to be used. Areas in which hostile tanks are likely to operate are undesirable as assembly areas. Routes

affording cover and concealment from the assembly area to prepared positions are selected. All men in the platoon area are acquainted with these routes and with their positions and missions in each organized defense area.

(2) Within the assembly area, squad areas are allotted; each should be large enough to prevent congestion. Individuals take cover in ditches and other defilade. If no natural cover is available, individual prone trenches are dug for shelter from artillery fire and aerial bombardment. (See FM 21–45 and appendix I.)

(3) When he assigns the platoon a counterattack mission, the company commander prescribes the objective and direction of attack. The counterattack is launched against hostile elements which have overrun a front-line defense area, or against hostile elements effecting an infiltration that threatens to envelop a forward area. When a defense area has been lost, the counterattack seeks to regain the position. It should strike hostile forces in flank with the full force of the platoon. The counterattack of a support platoon is a bayonet assault delivered quickly before the enemy has time to reorganize. The platoon does not pursue beyond the main line of resistance, except by fire. The counterattack plan is fully explained to all men of the platoon and, if time permits, is rehearsed.

(4) The company commander decides whether the support platoon is to counterattack or to occupy a prepared position.

■ 118. FIRE PLAN.—*a.* The front-line platoon distributes its fire to cover its front and flanks and the fronts of adjacent platoons. Each rifle squad is given a sector of fire. The flanks of the sector are indicated to the squad leader by terrain features. To insure complete coverage of the target, the rifle squad sectors of fire overlap. The area in front of adjacent platoons is included in the sectors of fire of flank squads. Automatic rifles are emplaced to cover the major portion of the squad sector of fire and be able to fire across the fronts of adjacent squads. They are assigned a principal direction of fire to cover specific terrain features or gaps in the close defensive fires of the supporting weapons. They are valuable for covering small draws or other approaches to the position.

b. The support platoon assigns sectors of fire to its squads to cover the flanks of the forward platoons and the gaps between the platoons. It must be capable of shifting its fire to either flank or to the rear to defend against an attempted envelopment of the company.

c. Platoon fire plans are coordinated by the company commander.

■ 119. ANTIMECHANIZED DEFENSE.—See paragraph 71.

■ 120. ANTIAIRCRAFT SECURITY.—See paragraph 72.

■ 121. COMMAND AND OBSERVATION POST.—The platoon leader stations himself where he can best observe the front and flanks of his area and can signal his squad leaders. His position should afford nearby cover for messengers and defiladed routes to the company command post. The platoon sergeant is near the platoon leader.

■ 122. ORGANIZATION OF GROUND.—The extent of organization of the platoon defense area is limited only by the time and facilities available. The order in which this construction is to be executed is expressed in orders in the form of priorities. Simultaneous work is done on several tasks where possible. Automatic weapons are mounted and crews are ready to fire during this organization. Camouflage and other provisions for concealment precede, or are concurrent with, other work. After the locations of weapon emplacements have been fixed, the primary considerations are to get the men dug in, the position concealed to the maximum extent from both air and ground observation, and the foreground cleared sufficiently to permit effective fire.

■ 123. LOCAL SECURITY.—The platoon provides for its own local security by constant observation to the front and flanks. An observer is posted at all times in each subordinate defense area to give warning of any hostile ground or air approach. At night double sentries may be required as listening posts to cover possible avenues of hostile approach. Sentries are regularly relieved, at least every two hours; more frequent relief may be advisable.

■ 124. CONDUCT OF DEFENSE.—*a.* Successful defense is predicated on each subordinate unit holding its area. The platoon holds its position at all costs. *It never withdraws except upon the verified order of higher authority.* The platoon takes cover during the hostile artillery preparation and assumes firing positions as soon as the artillery fire has lifted. Fire is withheld until the attacker approaches within effective rifle range (500 yards). The accurate fire and close combat of riflemen and automatic riflemen is the deciding issue in battle. As the hostile advance draws nearer, rates of fire are increased. Much depends on the subordinate leaders controlling the fire of their units and directing it against the most threatening targets. The company commander is kept informed of the situation. If the attacker succeeds in rushing the position, he is met with fire, grenades, and the bayonet. The platoon holds its ground and repulses or destroys the attacker.

b. When an adjacent defense area is penetrated, fire is directed against that hostile force to prevent him from widening the break in the adjacent area and thereafter enveloping nearby platoons. Should the platoon be threatened with envelopment, its leader makes changes in dispositions of his personnel and of any supporting weapons in his area so as to insure all-around defense of his position.

■ 125. PLATOON AS COMBAT OUTPOST.—The battalion may prescribe that front-line companies establish combat outposts. The battalion order will indicate the location and may prescribe the strength of the outpost. The support platoon will usually perform this mission. While the platoon is engaged on this duty the platoon leader or the platoon sergeant reconnoiters the support area and outlines its defensive position. For details pertaining to the platoon as a combat outpost, see paragraph 98.

■ 126. RETROGRADE MOVEMENTS.—For the rifle platoon in retrograde movements, see section IV, chapter 3.

SECTION IV

SECURITY MISSIONS

■ 127. GENERAL.—*a.* The rifle platoon usually performs security missions as a part of the rifle company. In some situa-

tions the platoon performs missions similar to those described for the rifle company in chapter 4.

b. On the march, security missions of the rifle platoon include its employment as an advance party, rear party, flank guard, or march outpost.

c. The platoon may be detailed on outpost duty to protect a bivouac, as part of a general outpost, as a combat outpost of a front-line battalion in defensive operations, or as a flank security patrol.

■ 128. ADVANCE PARTY.—*a.* When the platoon is employed as an advance party it is sent forward from the support. (See figs. 13 and 14.) The mission of the advance party is to provide for the security of the support by firing on any enemy encountered and by moving rapidly to determine the hostile dispositions. The advance party, in turn, sends forward a half-squad or squad as a point. For the duties of a point, see paragraph 157*b*.

b. An advance party is disposed in column of twos with one file on each side of the road. The advance party commander usually marches at the head of the advance party or between the point and the advance party. He goes, however, where he can best observe the ground and, if resistance is met, direct the action to be taken. He is responsible that the assigned route or direction of march is followed. He usually is responsible for the rate of march of the advance guard. He prescribes the distance at which the point is to precede the advance party. In open country, this varies between 150 and 250 yards. In wooded country or at night, distances are considerably reduced. The advance party sends forward connecting files to maintain contact with the point.

c. An advance party the size of a platoon may be called upon to furnish two or three small foot patrols of from two to three men each to provide for patrolling up to 200 or 300 yards to each flank. The support commander prescribes exactly what patrolling is to be done by the advance party. If the support commander fails to state these details, the advance party commander should ask specifically what is desired.

d. Any resistance which the point is unable to overcome is attacked at once by the advance party, which deploys and

attacks to the front or around a flank, without hesitation or special reconnaissance. Every effort is made to clear the way quickly for the remainder of the column. When the resistance has been overcome, the march is promptly resumed. (See fig. 15.)

e. When the advance guard halts, the advance party forms a march outpost. It immediately sends observers to nearby points affording observation to the front and flanks.

f. A platoon acting as the advance guard of a small force is organized and conducts its action as an advance party.

■ 129. REAR PARTY.—*a.* A company employed as support of a rear guard will ordinarily employ a platoon as rear party to provide security to the rear. The rear party, in turn, sends back a rear point, usually a half-squad; however, a squad may be employed. The platoon also drops back connecting files to maintain contact with the rear point.

b. When on foot, the rear party is disposed in column of twos with one file on each side of the road. The rear party commander normally marches behind the rear party. From this position he can quickly decide what to do when the rear point is fired on. He states in his orders the distance, or time interval, at which the rear point is to follow the rear party—usually, if on foot, not more than 200 yards in open country and less in close country or, if motorized, a time interval of two minutes. The distance between the rear party and the support is prescribed by the support commander. (See par. 93.)

c. Patrolling to the flanks by a rear party of the size of a platoon is rarely undertaken. Rear guard patrols which are sent out from the support rejoin the rear party.

d. When the rear party commander decides that it is necessary to fight in place, he selects a firing position providing long fields of fire and well to the rear of that occupied by the point. He sends a runner to the leader of the point to tell him where the position is and to lead the point back in its withdrawal. The withdrawal of the rear party is covered by the rear support.

e. When the rear support halts, the rear party forms a march outpost, dismounting if motorized.

f. A platoon acting as rear guard of a small force is organized and conducts its action as a rear party.

■ 130. FLANK GUARD.—See paragraph 95.

■ 131. OUTPOST DUTY.—*a. Protection of a bivouac.*—(1) *Support (or outguard) of an outpost.*—See chapters 4 and 6.

(2) *Detached post.*—(*a*) The platoon may be detailed as a detached post to hold a terrain feature such as a stream crossing or important road junction outside of the outpost zone. The platoon organizes for all-around defense, posts observers to keep all approaches under observation, and executes such patrolling as is necessary for its own security.

(*b*) The platoon constructs road blocks and prepares demolitions as specifically ordered. Road blocks and demolitions are kept under constant surveillance. The platoon position is within effective rifle fire of such road blocks, but sufficiently removed to prevent casualities from artillery fire or dive bombing on the road block (200–400 yards). The antitank rifle grenadiers remain with their squads for close antimechanized protection.

b. March outpost.—See paragraphs 99 and 157*h*.

c. Part of general outpost.—See paragraph 97.

d. Combat outpost.—See paragraph 98.

■ 132. FLANK SECURITY PATROL.—The platoon acting as a flank security patrol conforms, in general, to the doctrines governing the employment of a rifle squad as a flank security patrol. (See par. 157*f*.) The platoon leader is told to go to a certain place, or to move abreast of the attacking echelon. On the march, the leader sends a point of four to six men 50 to 200 yards to his front. He protects his flanks, if necessary, by small patrols. When the platoon halts, observers are posted in pairs to watch the front, flanks, and rear. The remainder of the platoon is held under cover ready to resist in any direction. Contact is maintained with the group being protected. See paragraph 95 for use of the platoon as a motorized flank patrol.

CHAPTER 6

RIFLE SQUAD

		Paragraphs
SECTION I.	General	133–139
II.	Attack	140–148
III.	Defense	149–155
IV.	Security missions	156–159

SECTION I

GENERAL

■ 133. COMPOSITION.—The rifle squad consists of a sergeant (squad leader), a corporal (assistant squad leader and antitank rifle grenadier), an automatic rifle team (automatic rifleman, assistant automatic rifleman, and ammunition bearer), and seven riflemen, two of whom are designated as scouts.

■ 134. DUTIES OF LEADERS.—*a.* The squad leader is responsible for the discipline, appearance, training, control, and conduct of his squad. He leads it in combat. Under the platoon leader's direction, the squad leader arranges for feeding his men, enforces proper observance of rules of personal hygiene and sanitation, requires that weapons and equipment be kept clean and in serviceable condition, and checks and reports on the ammunition supply within the squad. His squad must be trained to use and care for its weapons, to move and fight efficiently as individuals, and function effectively as a part of the military team.

b. The assistant squad leader performs duties assigned by the squad leader and takes command of the squad in his absence. He carries the antitank rifle and, during a tank attack, engages with antitank rifle grenades any hostile tanks within range. (See par. 2*b*(5).) The squad leader may designate him to command a portion of the squad, to act as observer, or to supervise replenishment of ammunition.

■ 135. TARGET DESIGNATION.—Battlefield targets are generally indistinct. They must be designated with such accuracy and simplicity as to be unmistakable. Squad leaders and

other members of the squad are trained to designate the location and extent of such targets. For technique of target designation, see FM 23–5, 23–10, and 23–15.

■ 136. FIRE CONTROL.—*a.* Fire control implies the ability of the squad leader to open fire when he desires, adjust the fire of his squad upon the target, shift the fire of all or part of the squad from one target to another, regulate the rate of fire, and cease firing at will.

b. The squad leader announces the range, designates the target, and gives the command for opening fire. In combat, he controls the fire as long as possible by employing signals or by requiring skirmishers to transmit oral orders along the front of the squad. He concentrates the fire of the squad on the assigned target. On orders of the platoon leader, or on his own initiative, he shifts the fire of all or part of his squad to new targets. (See FM 23–5, 23–10, and 23–15.)

■ 137. FIRE DISCIPLINE.—Fire discipline in the rifle squad is maintained by careful observance of instructions relative to the use of its weapons and exact execution of orders. It requires care in sight setting, aim, and trigger squeeze; close attention to the squad leader; and cessation or change of rate of fire on the squad leader's order or signal. Fire discipline also requires that upon release of fire control by the squad leader to individual skirmishers, each member of the squad acts on his own initiative, selects his target, estimates the range, opens and ceases fire in accordance with the situation, and conserves his ammunition.

■ 138. RANGE.—Ranges can be determined most accurately by sighting shots where the strike of bullets can be observed, or when tracer ammunition is used. Estimation of ranges by eye enables a squad to place surprise fire on the target. All personnel must be trained to estimate ranges by eye. (See FM 23–5.)

■ 139. AMMUNITION SUPPLY.—*a.* Each member of the squad habitually carries an initial supply of ammunition on his person; In addition, the assistant automatic rifleman and the ammunition bearer also carry ammunition for the automatic rifle. Similarly, the assistant squad leader carries some rifle

ammunition as well as several antitank rifle grenades. Prior to entry into combat, hand grenades and an additional supply of ammunition are issued to all members of the squad. For additional details pertaining to ammunition supply, see paragraph 201.

b. During combat the squad leader requests the platoon leader to replenish ammunition and insures that all unexpended ammunition on casualties is secured by members of his squad.

SECTION II

ATTACK

■ 140. FIRE ORDERS.—*a.* The details included in fire orders are dependent upon the time available, cover, and character of the target.

(1) If the target is at close range and unmistakable, fire orders may be limited to the command "commence firing."

(2) Detailed fire orders are not practicable when the squad occupies an exposed position, and fire control must be released to the individual skirmishers.

(3) Whenever practicable, preliminary fire orders are issued under cover before the skirmishers occupy firing positions. When the target cannot be easily identified, the squad leader will have the men creep or crawl sufficiently close to the crest or other mask to see the foreground. He completes the fire order when the men have signified recognition (signal "ready"). For examples of fire orders see FM 23–5, 23–10, and 23–15.

■ 141. ANTIMECHANIZED DEFENSE AND ANTIAIRCRAFT SECURITY.—See paragraphs 9*c*, 12*c*, and 17*i*(3).

■ 142. APPROACH MARCH.—*a. Dispositions.*—When the platoon leaves the route column to take up the approach march the squad marches with the platoon as ordered by the platoon leader. (See par. 106.) The squad dispositions (formations) are squad column, skirmishers, skirmishers right (left), and squad wedge. (See FM 22–5.) The initial (first) formation may be prescribed by the platoon leader; thereafter a squad leader changes the disposition of his squad to meet changes in the situation and terrain. In selecting a forma-

tion, the squad leader considers the necessity of employing his weapons promptly, of presenting a poor target to the enemy, and of retaining control of his squad.

(1) "Squad column" is vulnerable to hostile fire from the front and requires a change of formation to permit the employment of all the squad's weapons to the front, but is easily controlled and maneuvered. It is suitable for crossing areas exposed to artillery fire, for utilizing narrow covered routes, and for movement in woods, fog, smoke, and darkness. It facilitates immediate action toward the flanks. The automatic rifleman is posted close to the squad leader near the head of the column. A squad column does not usually exceed 60 paces in depth.

(2) "As skirmishers" is less vulnerable to hostile fire from the front, and enables the squad to employ its weapons to the front without change of formation; but it is more difficult to control than squad column. It is adapted to rapid dashes across open spaces, particularly shelled areas. When the squad is deployed in skirmish line its front ordinarily should not exceed 60 paces.

(3) "Squad wedge" combines most of the advantages, with few of the disadvantages, of the other two dispositions. It is especially adapted to situations when readiness for action in any direction is required; it is frequently used when emerging from cover or from a defile. It is also adapted to take best advantage of cover on broken ground and for traversing zones near the enemy but beyond effective rifle range of known hostile positions.

b. Passing through long-range fire.—When the enemy is covering a zone across the line of advance with long-range machine-gun or artillery fire (interdiction fire), the squad frequently crosses short stretches of such exposed terrain by successive movement of individuals. This action is taken by the squad leader, upon his own initiative or when directed by his platoon leader. Individuals do not stop until they have passed through the area covered by fire; this is particularly important when crossing crests or passing through defiles. The squad leader moves across the area first and reforms his squad beyond the area as the men come through.

c. Position and duties of leaders.—(1) *Squad leader.*—During the approach march the position of the squad leader is at the head of, or in advance of, his squad. He regulates his advance on the base squad or, being in command of the base squad, advances as directed by the platoon leader. He studies the ground to the front to choose the best route and to control and regulate the movement of his squad. He decreases distances and intervals between individuals as conditions of visibility become poor. He, or a member of the squad designated by him, maintains the prescribed direction. He makes minor detours to take advantage of better routes of advance.

(2) *Assistant squad leader.*—The assistant squad leader is usually posted in rear of the squad to prevent straggling, to prevent elongation or closing up of the squad, and to insure its orderly advance. During a hostile tank attack he takes position where he can best engage the hostile tanks with his antitank rifle grenades.

d. Duties of scouts.—(1) When it is not preceded by friendly troops within view, a rifle platoon in the attacking echelon of a leading company is preceded by its scouts. The scouts operate under control of the platoon leader. (See paragraph 106*f*.) Deployed in pairs at wide and irregular intervals, they move out boldly to the front to reconnoiter successive positions (objectives) along the route of advance, and seek to force enemy riflemen and machine guns to disclose their position. One member of each pair watches for signals from the platoon leader. They take advantage of cover without delaying their advance, and cross exposed ground at a run. Their distance in front of the platoon is governed by orders of the platoon leader and varies with the ground and with the probable position of the enemy. One moment they may be 500 yards ahead; at another time they may be absorbed within their units. In approaching houses, natural defiles, and villages, one scout of each pair covers the movement and reconnaissance of the other.

(2) When scouts reach woods, one scout of each pair reconnoiters within the woods for a short distance while the other covers his movement. As soon as the leading scout determines that the edge of the woods is free of the enemy he returns within view and signals "forward." The second scout

repeats this signal to the platoon leader. Both scouts then enter the woods and maintain observation toward the enemy until the platoon comes up. Scouts passing through woods ahead of their platoon keep within sight of each other. If an obstacle is encountered, they reconnoiter to the front and flanks. When advancing along a road or path, scouts reconnoiter well to the flanks before signaling "forward" to the platoon. Scouts halt at the far edge of a woods until the platoon leader arrives; he then gives them further directions. When sent ahead to reconnoiter dangerous points, they signal back whether conditions indicate that the platoon halt, continue to march, or quickly rush across the area. They are continually on the lookout for signals from the rear. For signals, see FM 22–5.

(3) If the enemy opens fire, the scouts stop, seek cover, and try to determine the enemy's position. When the enemy position is located, one scout of each pair crawls to the best nearby firing position and opens fire with tracer ammunition to indicate the target. The second scout observes and orders necessary changes in range. When adjustment of fire is completed, he also opens fire. If the scouts have no tracer ammunition, one opens fire and the other points out the target to the platoon leader.

e. Action when scouts are fired on.—When the scouts are halted by fire, the squad leader immediately gets the squad under cover, studies the terrain for covered routes forward, and watches the platoon leader for orders. The squad leader may be directed to reform his squad on the line of scouts and open the fire fight, or to move his squad to some other firing position from which he can more effectively engage the enemy. Avoiding as much as practicable the hostile fire holding up the scouts, the squad leader advances his squad to the firing position by—

(1) *Infiltration of individuals or groups of individuals.*—Where there is little cover or concealment and the area between the firing position and the squad is under enemy observation or fire, the advance is continued by sending forward individuals or groups of two or three men at a time.

(2) *Rushes.*—When the enemy fire permits, and the distance to be covered is short, the squad is moved forward by rushes. Otherwise it is preferable to crawl or creep. (See FM 22–5.)

(3) *Using covered route of approach.*—The squad advances as a unit when there is a covered route to the position. The usual formation is either squad column or wedge. The squad leader issues the fire order under cover, has the men creep or crawl to their firing positions, and then open a surprise volume of accurate fire.

f. Fire distribution.—Each member of the squad fires his first shot on that portion of the target corresponding generally to his position in the squad. He then distributes his next shots to the right and left of his first shot, covering that part of the target on which he can deliver accurate fire without having to change position. The amount of the target which one man can cover will depend upon the range and the position of the firer. Frequently each man will be able to cover the entire target with accurate fire; this should be done whenever possible. Fire is not limited to points within the target known to contain an enemy; on the contrary, all men space their shots so that no portion of the target remains unhit. Automatic riflemen fire bursts of about five rounds at the slow cyclic rate (in about 1 second). This method of fire distribution is employed without command. The squad leader observes the fire to insure that the entire target is kept under fire. If other targets appear, he announces such changes in fire distribution as are necessary.

■ **143. PREPARATIONS FOR COORDINATED ATTACK.**—*a. Assembly areas.*—(1) Unless the squad, during the approach march, is part of a leading platoon and becomes engaged with the enemy as described in paragraph 106*e*, it usually is directed to halt briefly in a covered area designated by the platoon leader. This area is usually part of a company or battalion assembly area. Immediately on arrival in this area the squad leader disperses his men in the area allotted him by the platoon leader. He takes advantage of all natural cover and concealment to protect them from aerial and ground observation and fire. Every man must take ad-

vantage of existing holes or furrows, or must be required to dig an individual prone shelter, so that his body will be below the level of the ground in order to reduce the danger from bomb or shell fragments. (See fig. 30.)

(2) The squad may furnish an interior guard for the platoon; the principal duty of such a guard is to see that men do not congregate or expose themselves or their equipment to hostile observation. It also may post one or more sentinels to guard against surprise attack by hostile patrols or may furnish air-antitank guards.

(3) As soon as his men are disposed in the assembly area, the squad leader inspects the physical condition and equipment of every man. Extra ammunition usually is issued in the assembly area. (See par. 201.) The squad leader insures that each man receives the proper quantities and types.

b. Reconnaissance.—(1) The squad leader may move forward in advance of his squad to receive the platoon leader's attack order, or may receive it after the squad has left the assembly area and arrived in the vicinity from which the attack is to start. (See par. 110*f*.) He may be able to reconnoiter or observe the ground over which his squad is to attack in much the same manner as described in paragraph 110*b* for the platoon leader. If there is so little time remaining after receiving the platoon order that he must lead his squad at once into its position, the squad leader, during his return to the squad, selects a route of advance. Thereafter, having issued certain parts of his order, he precedes his squad and continues his reconnaissance as he advances. He never exposes his squad in an area subject to enemy small-arms fire without prior reconnaissance.

c. *Squad attack order.*—(1) The squad leader issues his attack order to all men of his squad. Orders are well executed only when they are clear and definite and all 12 minds in the squad understand the squad mission and the plan for accomplishing that mission. To be certain that nothing is left out, a definite sequence is followed. The squad leader—

(*a*) Tells the men all that he knows about the enemy and about his own troops that they do not already know and which directly affect their conduct in the action.

(*b*) Tells the men what the squad is to do and what his plan is for doing it.

(c) Tells each man what he is to do. If all are to do the same thing, there is no need to tell each one separately.

(d) Tells the squad where he is going to be. When he is to be at a distance from the squad, he tells them exactly where he will be. For example: "I will be ahead of the squad, with the scouts, in those bushes" (pointing to them).

(2) Squad leaders can most effectively give instructions to their squads under cover. It is very difficult to communicate instructions and insure their execution after the squads have occupied the firing position.

■ 144. CONDUCT OF ATTACK.—*a. Movement to attack.*—The squad usually moves from the assembly area to the area from which it is to start its attack under control of the platoon leader or company commander. This movement is a continuation of the approach march. (See par. 142.) The platoon leader's attack order will direct that the squad start its attack on a prescribed signal or at a specified time. The squad may be directed to attack from a certain small area or from the vicinity of a certain point. The squad must be in its assigned place, ready to move forward or commence firing, at the prescribed time. Sometimes, however, the squad is directed to cross a certain road or other "line of departure" on a prescribed signal or at a specified time. In this situation, the squad should be held under cover a short distance in rear of the designated line until just before the time of attack. If possible, the start of its movement should be so timed that, without halting, its leading man crosses the line at the specified moment.

b. Fire and movement.—(1) Unless otherwise ordered by the platoon leader, the squad leader permits his squad to open fire only when fire action is necessary to cover a further advance. At the first firing position, the squad seeks to gain fire superiority over the enemy to its front. Fire superiority is gained by subjecting the enemy to fire of such accuracy and intensity that his fire becomes so inaccurate or so reduced in volume as to be ineffective; once gained, it must be maintained. Unless supporting weapons or other units are able to maintain fire superiority without any help from the squad, enough members of the squad must remain in position and continue the fire to maintain it. The auto-

matic rifle's capacity for putting down a large volume of fire makes it especially useful for this purpose. Meanwhile, other members of the squad move forward, take up firing positions closer to the enemy, and, by their fire, cover the forward movement of the rearward members. By this combination of fire and movement, the squad advances close enough to capture the hostile position by assault. (See pars. 145 and 146.)

(2) When the squad begins firing, the method of its further advance is determined by the effectiveness of the hostile fire and by the terrain features affording cover. The squad must take advantage of every irregularity of the ground to provide protection against hostile fire. Complete fire superiority is required for men to advance over open ground in the face of an unbeaten enemy. The squad can advance as a unit only when completely defiladed from hostile small-arms fire or when the hostile fire is kept neutralized by the fire of other units or of supporting weapons. Therefore, the squad usually works forward by irregular or successive advances of individuals.

(3) Rushes by individuals or small groups are used to move from cover to cover across short stretches of terrain. Even in very open terrain the well-trained rifleman will be able to locate and use all kinds of limited cover, such as slight depressions or rises. However, in very open areas, an advance will usually necessitate overwhelming fire superiority with consequent longer bounds between firing positions. To leave a covered position, make a short rush, and drop into a position which affords no protection from enemy ground fire, serves only to increase losses without commensurate gain.

(4) The automatic rifleman supports the rapid advance of other members of the squad from flank positions. Because of the difficulty of maintaining an adequate supply of ammunition, the fire of automatic rifles is conserved to the actual needs of the situation. Thus, when the fires of individual riflemen serve to accomplish the desired effect, they are used in preference to the automatic rifle.

(5) The squad increases its rate of fire during periods when any part of it or of an adjacent squad is in movement.

(6) When the squad leader decides to advance with certain individuals, he turns command of the remaining men over to the assistant squad leader. The assistant squad leader causes the remaining men to advance on his orders. The squad leader decides whether the automatic rifleman will accompany him in the first group of individuals or remain under the control of the assistant squad leader. In other situations, the squad leader may direct that his assistant control the advance of the first few individuals, while the squad leader remains in his present position. Exceptionally, when the squad is able to advance in a single rush, the squad leader gives the necessary commands. The intensity of the hostile resistance and the available cover will indicate which method should be used.

(7) (*a*) In moving forward from one firing position to another, and if a defiladed area is available behind the new position, the men are halted in rear of it. The squad leader creeps forward quickly to locate and observe the target, and to decide where to place the individual members of his squad. First he selects a position for the automatic rifleman; then he decides how and where to employ his riflemen. He requires the men to move forward and observe the target with a minimum of exposure and gives his preliminary fire orders (sight setting and description of the target). He then commands "fire position," and his men crawl to a position from which they can open fire on the target at the leader's signal. The squad leader then orders or signals "commence firing."

(*b*) When this method cannot be followed, the squad leader may designate the new firing position to the first individuals to advance, send them forward, and thereafter build up the new firing line with other men as they arrive. At times it may be necessary to advance to a new firing position merely by signaling "forward" to individuals or groups in the squad and then leaving it up to the leading element to select the new firing position.

c. *Position and duties of squad leader.*—(1) During the fire fight, the primary duty of the squad leader is to place the fire of his squad on the target. He enforces fire discipline. The squad leader takes a position from which he can best control his men and observe the effect of their fire. In select-

ing his position, he considers the necessity of maintaining contact with the platoon leader. At times, on account of the noise and confusion of battle, the leader may have to go to the firing line and move from man to man to give instructions. He fires only in emergency, or when he considers that the fire power to be gained by his firing outweighs the necessity for his close control of his squad. Experienced soldiers may be designated to supervise the fire discipline of the two or three men in their immediate vicinity.

(2) When the squad leader cannot personally maintain effective control over the fire of the squad as a whole, he may retain control over a portion and temporarily delegate control over the remainder to the assistant squad leader.

(3) He requires that firing be limited to enemy troops or those positions (small areas) where enemy troops are known or believed to be located.

(4) He looks ahead for firing positions which his squad can use as the platoon moves forward.

(5) He seeks a position for his automatic rifleman which permits flanking fire to be delivered on any target across the entire squad front.

(6) He is constantly on the alert to advance his squad to a location nearer the enemy.

(7) He is responsible for maintaining contact with the platoon leader at all times; he may delegate this duty to the assistant squad leader.

(8) He prevents the members of his squad from becoming so widely separated that he loses control.

(9) He prevents several men from bunching behind cover suitable for only one man. Isolated trees, stumps, bushes, or other well-defined objects should be avoided.

(10) He observes the location of units on his flanks and makes a prompt report to the platoon leader whenever wide gaps occur in the attacking echelon.

(11) During lulls in the fight, the squad leader checks ammunition and has ammunition collected from the dead and wounded.

(12) In the absence of instructions from the platoon leader, particularly during the last stages of the fire fight, the squad leader may often have to attack important or dangerous targets without orders.

(13) He resists by fire sudden attacks from the flanks.

(14) If the squad becomes separated from its platoon, he makes every effort to locate and join the nearest friendly troops. The squad leader then takes orders from the leader of these troops. At the first favorable opportunity the squad is released and rejoins its platoon.

d. Position and duties of assistant squad leader.—The assistant squad leader's position is not fixed; he takes position where he can best assist the squad leader and be prepared to protect the squad from tank attack. He usually assists in enforcing fire discipline, controlling the fire, supervising the replenishment of ammunition, and maintaining contact with the platoon leader. He may be required to fire caliber .30 ammunition when the squad leader believes his fire is necessary. He is always prepared to fire antitank rifle grenades on hostile tanks coming within range.

■ 145. ASSAULT.—The assault is delivered on orders, on signal of the platoon leader, or on the initiative of the squad leader. It is delivered at the earliest moment that promises success and without regard to the progress of adjacent squads. The squad approaches the hostile resistance by keeping as close as practicable to the supporting fires. When these fires are lifted, the squad may employ assault fire to prevent the enemy from manning his position. In the final stage of the assault the hostile position is overrun in a single rush with the bayonet. Against an intrenched enemy, the final charge may be preceded by a hand-grenade volley.

■ 146. ASSAULT FIRE.—Assault fire is the fire delivered by a unit during its assault on a hostile position. Automatic riflemen and riflemen, with bayonets fixed, all taking full advantage of existing cover such as tanks, boulders, trees, walls, and mounds, advance rapidly toward the enemy and fire as they advance at areas known or believed to be occupied by hostile personnel. Such fire is usually delivered from the standing position and is executed at a rapid rate.

■ 147. REORGANIZATION.—After a successful assault, the squad leader reorganizes his squad and prepares to advance or to repel hostile counterattacks. (See par. 108*e*.)

■ 148. SUPPORT SQUAD.—*a.* Before the attack, the squad leader of a squad in support informs his men of the situation and proposed action of the platoon. He advances his squad in accordance with the orders or signals of the platoon leader or platoon sergeant, keeping it under cover as far as practicable, and preventing it from merging with the attacking squads.

b. When directed to reinforce the attacking squads, he points out the positions of the enemy and of the attacking squads. He indicates the part of the line to be reinforced and prepares the squad for a rush (see FM 22–5), extending intervals if necessary.

c. If ordered to attack a definitely located hostile resistance from a flank, the squad leader locates a departure position for the attack and the best-covered route of approach thereto. He then moves the squad, preceded when necessary by scouts, to the position selected, and endeavors to overwhelm the enemy by opening surprise fire and delivering the assault from an unexpected direction.

SECTION III

DEFENSE

■ 149. GENERAL.—The platoon leader's defense order assigns to the rifle squad the general trace of the line to be occupied, a specific sector of fire, and general locations and principal directions of fire for the automatic rifleman and the antitank rifle grenadier. The location of each member of the squad and the assignment of individual sectors of fire is a function of the squad leader. As soon as the squad reaches the position, the automatic rifle is set up and prepared to fire. (See fig. 19.)

■ 150. SQUAD DEFENSE ORDER.—Upon receipt of the platoon defense order the squad leader looks over his areas and notes the locations of adjacent squads and any supporting weapons for which he must provide close protection. He then issues his order to the squad. The order covers:

a. The enemy situation.

b. Location of adjacent squads and supporting weapons.

c. The extent of the squad area and sector of fire.

d. General location for each member of the squad.

e. Location of command posts of the platoon and company.

■ 151. ORGANIZATION OF THE SQUAD DEFENSE AREA.—*a.* The squad leader then has each man lie down in a firing position. Individuals are placed at least five yards apart. He then adjusts their positions until each man is able to cover the desired sector of fire. Minor clearing is accomplished in the immediate foreground and foxholes or slit trenches are constructed. (See appendix I.)

b. The squad leader assigns a sector of fire to each firing member of his squad. Adjacent individual sectors of fire overlap. The field of fire of the weapon on the extreme flank of the squad includes the front of the adjacent squad.

c. The automatic rifle is located where it can accomplish the mission assigned by the platoon leader. The sector of fire for the automatic rifle includes the squad sector of fire and the front of adjacent squads. (See par. 118.)

d. After the squad digs in, the squad leader examines his position from the direction of the enemy to check on individual camouflage. Special emphasis is placed on concealing the position from both ground and air observation.

e. To expedite the opening of fire, ranges are estimated to the most important landmarks in the squad sector of fire.

f. The squad leader takes position where he can best observe the squad area and exercise control. He posts the assistant squad leader where he can cover with his antitank rifle grenades the most favorable approach for hostile tanks, and assist in exercising control.

g. As time and other duties permit, the squad leader prepares in duplicate a rough sketch of the squad's sector of fire showing prominent terrain features with the estimated ranges thereto. He submits the sketch to the platoon leader and retains a copy for his own use.

■ 152. ANTIMECHANIZED DEFENSE AND ANTIAIRCRAFT SECURITY.—See paragraphs 71 and 72.

■ 153. CONDUCT OF DEFENSE.—*a.* During a hostile preparatory bombardment the squad takes cover in its prepared positions. As soon as the artillery fire or aerial bombing lifts, firing positions are taken to meet the hostile attack. Fire is with-

held until the enemy comes within effective rifle range (500 yards).

b. Members of the squad open fire upon an approaching enemy on command of the squad leader, given in accordance with the platoon leader's orders. The success of the defense depends upon each squad defending in place. If enemy riflemen enter the squad area, they are driven out by fire, grenades, and the bayonet. A stubborn defense in place by front-line squads breaks up enemy attack formations, and makes him vulnerable to counterattacks by higher units. *The squad withdraws only on orders of a higher commander.*

■ 154. NIGHT WITHDRAWAL.—In a night withdrawal, the squad leader withdraws his men at the designated time direct to the rear and assembles them in the first position which affords cover. He then forms squad column and conducts the squad to the platoon assembly area. (See par. 86.)

■ 155. DAYLIGHT WITHDRAWAL.—When the squad is ordered to withdraw during daylight, individuals are sent to the rear, thinning out the squad as rapidly as possible; those left in position cover this withdrawal. The squad leader withdraws with the last man of the squad, usually the automatic rifleman. The men retire from cover to cover, taking advantage of defiladed routes. The assistant squad leader, or a designated member of the squad, assembles the squad as rapidly as possible at the platoon assembly area.

SECTION IV

SECURITY MISSIONS

■ 156. GENERAL.—The rifle squad may be detailed to provide security for a larger unit, to perform reconnaissance missions, or to defend obstacles. The rifle squad or fraction thereof, in performing security or reconnaissance missions, may be classified either as a security patrol or as a reconnaissance patrol. (See FM 7–5, 21–45, 21–100, and 22–5.)

■ 157. SECURITY PATROLS.—*a. General.*—In order to perform their missions, security patrols usually are required to fight when they gain contact with hostile forces. Therefore the half-squad on a security patrol mission often includes the

automatic rifleman. Security patrols regulate their movement with reference to the unit they are protecting. Such patrols are further classified as follows:

(1) Point of advance, flank, or rear guard.
(2) Flank security patrol.
(3) Connecting group.
(4) March outpost.
(5) Outguards.

b. Point of advance guard.—(1) The point is the name given the few infantrymen (usually a rifle squad or half-squad) sent forward by the advance party. Motorized reconnaissance and security elements from higher units usually precede the point.

(2) The point of an advance guard moves along the axis of advance; it gives warning of the presence of any enemy that may have eluded motorized or mechanized covering forces; and prevents an enemy in the immediate vicinity of the route of march from opening surprise fire on the troops in rear.

(3) The point precedes the advance party by a distance varying with the nature of the terrain, but usually not exceeding 300 yards. To permit control by the squad leader, reduce the danger from hostile small-arms fire, and facilitate prompt fire action toward the front or either flank, the point marches in column of twos with one file on each side of the road and with a minimum of 5 paces between individuals. Two scouts precede the point by 50 to 100 yards. The squad leader may go wherever his presence is demanded, usually near the head of the point. The assistant squad leader marches at the tail of the point.

(4) The point fires on all hostile elements within effective rifle range. The presence of a distant enemy, beyond effective rifle range, is reported by the signal, "enemy in sight"; the point continues to advance until within effective range; it then opens fire and endeavors to drive the enemy off. When forced by enemy fire to stop, or when unable to drive off the enemy, the point holds its position and covers the action of the advance party. Rapid, aggressive movement and fire action by the point not only may drive off small enemy groups, but may force a large enemy group to commit itself to fire

action and disclose its dispositions, and thus materially assist the rapid and effective employment of the advance party.

(5) The point observes toward the front and flanks, but executes no flank reconnaissance.

(6) Except to open fire, the point stops only when so ordered by the advance party commander. When the column halts, the point sends forward one or more observers to guard against surprise attack. (See par. 128.)

c. *Point of flank guard.*—The point of a flank guard performs its missions in accordance with the instructions of the platoon leader, and in a manner similar to that prescribed for the point of an advance guard. (See par. 95.)

d. Point of rear guard.—(1) The rear point is the name given to the few infantrymen (usually a rifle squad or half-squad) farthest to the rear in a column on the march. It is detailed from the rear party. (See par. 129.)

(2) The dispositions of a rear point are similar to those of a point of an advance guard, in reverse order.

(3) The rear point stops to fire only when enemy action threatens to interfere with the march. It signals the rear party commander when the enemy is observed.

(4) The rear point can expect no reinforcement from other troops. When the enemy presses closely, other troops take up a position farther to the rear; the rear point, when forced back, withdraws around a flank or designated route so as not to mask their fire.

e. *Connecting files.*—(1) Connecting files are furnished by the larger units to keep contact with the next smaller unit in the direction of the enemy.

(2) Connecting files pass forward all orders and messages received from the unit sending them out. They halt only on orders or signals from that unit, or when the smaller unit halts. They pass back to the larger unit no signals except "enemy in sight," and special signals previously agreed upon.

(3) If a connecting file consists of one man, he looks alternately to the rear and to the front for signals. When the connecting file consists of two men (double connecting file), one man looks to the rear for signals, the other to the front;

and they remain near enough to each other to communicate by voice.

f. Flank security patrol.—(1) *General.*—(*a*) Throughout the various phases of an attack, as well as in defense, a rifle squad or half-squad may be sent out as a flank security patrol. Such a patrol may be told to go to a certain place, or simply to move generally abreast of the attacking echelon. (See pars. 17*i* and 21*f*.)

(*b*) If the patrol is to remain for a time at one locality, the leader selects, and has prepared, one or more firing positions for each man, to insure all-around defense. The half-squad posts one man to observe; the squad usually posts two men; another man watches for signals from the unit whose flank is being protected. The remainder of the patrol remains under cover, ready to go immediately to the selected firing positions.

(*c*) If the patrol is not directed to a specific location, the leader must choose a position from which he can protect the flank of his unit by holding off the enemy, or at least by giving warning of his approach.

(*d*) In the absence of instructions, the patrol leader moves his patrol so as to protect the flank of the unit sending him out. He selects routes and successive positions which enable him to perform his mission and at the same time to maintain contact with the unit protected. He details one or more men to observe constantly for signals, and informs his commander of his movements and plans, by messengers or visual signals.

(2) *On the march.*—(*a*) A rifle squad or half-squad is often detailed to act as a flank security patrol for a unit on the march. The squad leader is given orders either to go to a designated locality, remain for a specified time and then rejoin the column, or to march along a certain route or at a specified distance to the flank. (See par. 95.) Flank patrols may be required to move an equal distance in a shorter time than the main body, or a longer distance in the same time. Therefore, when vehicles are available, it may be highly desirable to provide them with motor transportation.

(*b*) The patrol moves so as to prevent the enemy from placing small-arms fire on the column within midrange

(400–600 yards). It investigates areas likely to conceal hostile elements and locations which might permit good observation by the enemy on and near the route of the patrol. It observes from commanding ground and moves rapidly from point to point so as to keep between the protected unit and possible locations of hostile elements.

(c) Hostile elements are reported by signal or messenger; large forces advancing toward the main body are reported both by signal and messenger. Hostile patrols moving away from the main body are reported but are not fired on; all other hostile forces within effective range are immediately attacked by fire. If the enemy opens fire either on the patrol or on the column, the patrol determines his strength and dispositions, and reports these promptly to the column commander. Meanwhile, the patrol resists to the last man an enemy attack on the column, unless ordered to withdraw.

(*d*) Contact with the patrol is maintained by the commander of the unit sending it out.

g. Connecting group.—(1) A rifle squad, half-squad, or smaller fraction sent to the flank of a company or platoon to keep in contact with the unit on that flank is called a connecting group. It moves and operates so that it knows at all times the location of the near flank of each unit with which it is keeping contact.

(2) If an adjacent unit falls behind, immediate report should be made to the commander who sent out the group. The connecting group may be divided into two smaller patrols in order to cover the widened interval and maintain contact with both units.

(3) If contact with the adjacent unit is lost, a report of that fact is made immediately by messenger to the commander who sent out the group. Unless ordered to return, the group remains out to protect the flank and becomes a flank security patrol. (See pars. 17*i*, 21*f*, 95, and *f*(1) above.)

(4) While maintaining contact, the connecting group fires only for self-protection or to give warning of a flank attack by the enemy.

h. March outpost.—When detailed as a march outpost and assigned an area of observation, a squad leader places his squad under cover so as to maintain thorough observation

of his area. Men are assigned to reliefs to insure alert observation. (See par. 99 and *i* below.)

i. Outguards.—(1) A squad, or a portion thereof, may be detailed as an outguard of an outpost for bivouac area. (See par. 96.) The support commander prescribes the posts of the outguard and the number of sentinels. Sentinels are designated as "Sentinel No. ——, Outguard No. ——, Support No. ——."

(2) The outguard commander selects the posts for sentinels covering his sector of observation. During the day they are placed primarily to observe; at night, to listen. At night it may be necessary to change the positions of the sentinels. Any talking at night must be in whispers.

(3) Sentinels are given the following information:

(*a*) As to enemy:

1. Direction.

2. Patrol or other activity in the area.

3. Special sector to watch.

(*b*) As to own troops:

1. Location of the support and outguards to the right and left, and number of his relief.

2. Any patrols which have gone out and will return through his post.

3. Where prisoners are to be taken and where messages are to be sent.

(*c*) Special signals, such as gas alarm and countersigns.

(*d*) Names of features of military importance, such as roads, villages, or streams.

(4) Members of the outguard not posted as sentinels rest nearby under cover (natural cover if available, otherwise individual protective trenches) but remain fully equipped and close to their weapons.

(5) The outguard commander is told what to do if the enemy attacks. When his orders direct that he resist a hostile attack, he causes individual firing emplacements to be dug.

■ 158. RECONNAISSANCE PATROLS.—*a.* Reconnaissance patrols are used primarily to secure information, maintain contact with the enemy, or observe terrain. They usually consist of a leader and three to five men. They avoid unnecessary

combat and accomplish their mission by stealth. They engage in fire fights only when necessary for the successful accomplishment of their mission or to protect themselves. They regulate their movements and locations with reference to their mission, and are not required to maintain contact with the unit which they serve. Automatic riflemen should *not* ordinarily be detailed with reconnaissance patrols, because such a mission requires mobility and stealth rather than fire power.

b. Orders to the patrol leader state the information of the enemy, mission, objective, general routes to be followed, the outpost or other security elements through which the patrol is to pass, time of return, and place where messages are to be sent or the patrol is to report. If the patrol is to return at a point different from its exit from the friendly lines, friendly troops at that point must be informed. Orders often are given to the entire patrol unless it is led by an officer.

c. Prior to departure, the patrol leader studies a map and the terrain, and selects a suitable route. He designates alternate leaders, informs the men of the situation, mission of the patrol, terrain to be crossed, individual tasks, special signals, and the assembly point in case the patrol is forced to separate. He prescribes what items of clothing are to be left behind and insures that each man carries a full canteen of water and the necessary rations. He inspects the patrol to insure that arms and equipment will not glisten or rattle, and that no letters or documents are carried. On leaving the friendly lines, the patrol leader informs the nearest outguard or front-line unit of his proposed route and obtains available information concerning the enemy and friendly patrols operating in the vicinity.

d. A reconnaissance patrol usually advances by bounds from one covered position to another. (See fig. 20.) Bounds are short near the enemy. When approaching a dangerous area, the patrol leader sends a scout ahead, while the others cover his advance. The scout signals "forward" if all is clear and remains in observation while the rest of the patrol advances.

e. (1) In searching woods, the patrol moves in a thin skirmish line. The interior of the woods is carefully reconnoitered by successive advances to clearings or trail junctions.

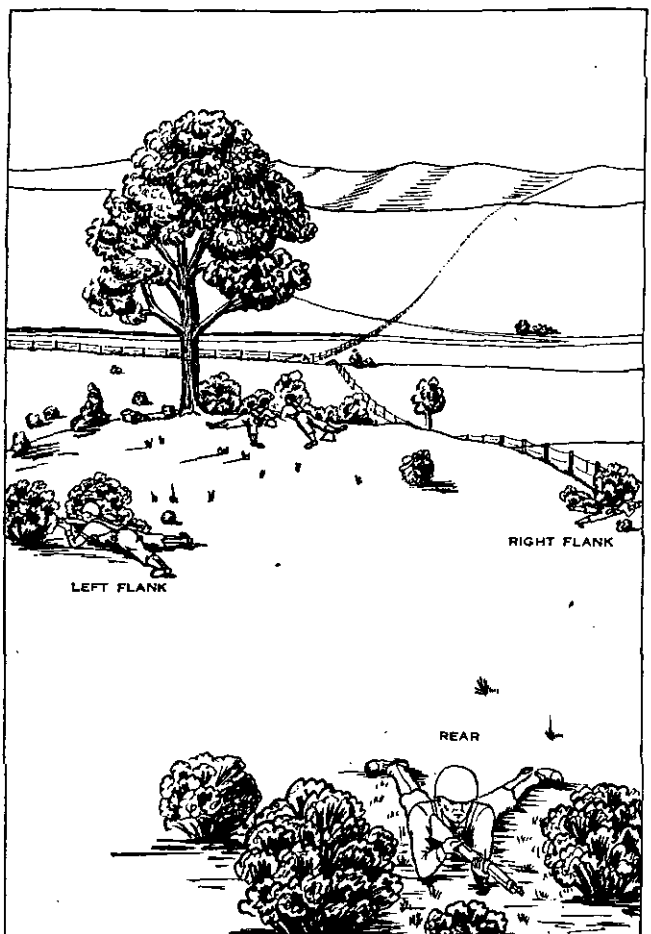


FIGURE 20.—Distribution of patrol halted in observation.

(2) A patrol usually moves along the heights on one or both sides of ravine or cut. If necessary to pass through a defile, the patrol adopts a staggered formation and keeps close to the sides. (See fig. 21.) If the distance to be traversed is

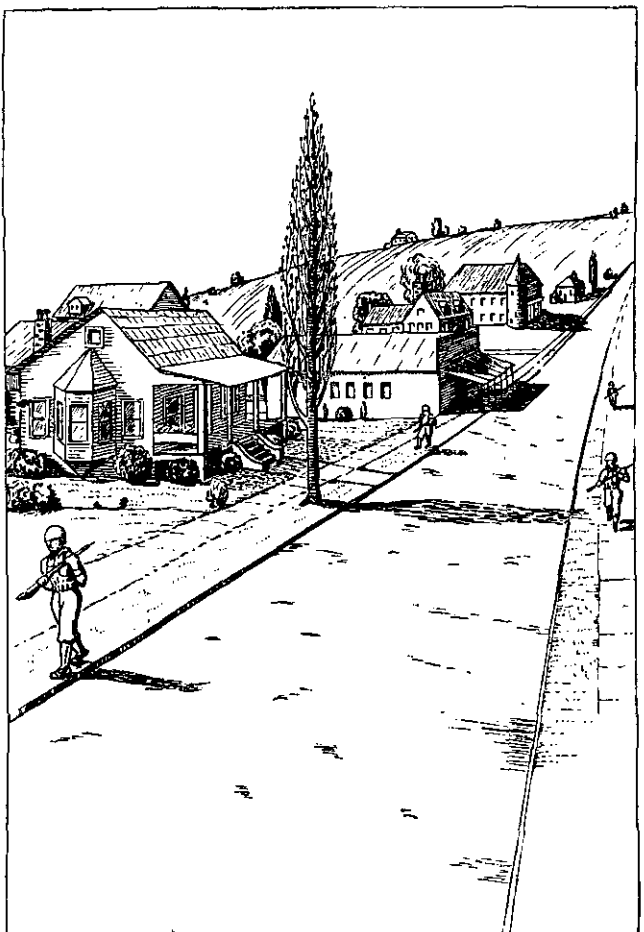


FIGURE 21.—Formation of patrol passing through village.

short, a scout is sent to the far side to observe; the remainder of the patrol does not enter the defile until he signals "forward." If the distance is too great or observation is limited, a scout moves by bounds at least 150 yards ahead of the patrol.

(3) Before a stream is crossed, the opposite bank is carefully observed. A scout crosses first; the other members of the patrol cover his advance and cross after he has made a brief reconnaissance. (See fig. 22.)

(4) On approaching a cross road, a patrol halts and sends scouts to the flanks to reconnoiter the side roads. The patrol advances when all is reported clear.

f. (1) By day, patrols are usually controlled by arm-and-hand signals and oral orders. By night, they are controlled by voice and by prearranged sound signals.

(2) Success in night patrolling depends largely upon the ability to move silently and maintain direction and control. Before starting, the patrol leader determines the compass direction and location of prominent objects near his route. In planning the route, he endeavors to avoid terrain features which hinder movement. Dispositions are similar to those adopted during daylight, but distances and intervals are reduced. (See fig. 23.)

g. Prearranged signals, audible for only a short distance, such as rustling of paper, snapping the edge of a matchbox with the finger nail, or tapping the helmet, are used to control the patrol. Oral orders and whispering are limited to emergencies. Signals to stop the patrol and move it forward are often given by the leading scout but may be given by any member in an emergency. Whoever halts the patrol is responsible for starting it again. A check-up signal, given by the patrol leader to verify the presence of all men, is answered according to a prearranged plan.

h. If a patrol is attacked, the man who first notes the danger calls out, "front," "right," "left," or "rear." All members face toward the man attacked. The men on the flanks advance a short distance straight ahead and then close on the enemy from the flanks. The patrol leader and any men with him rush the enemy. During the combat, the members of the patrol repeat their recognition signals.

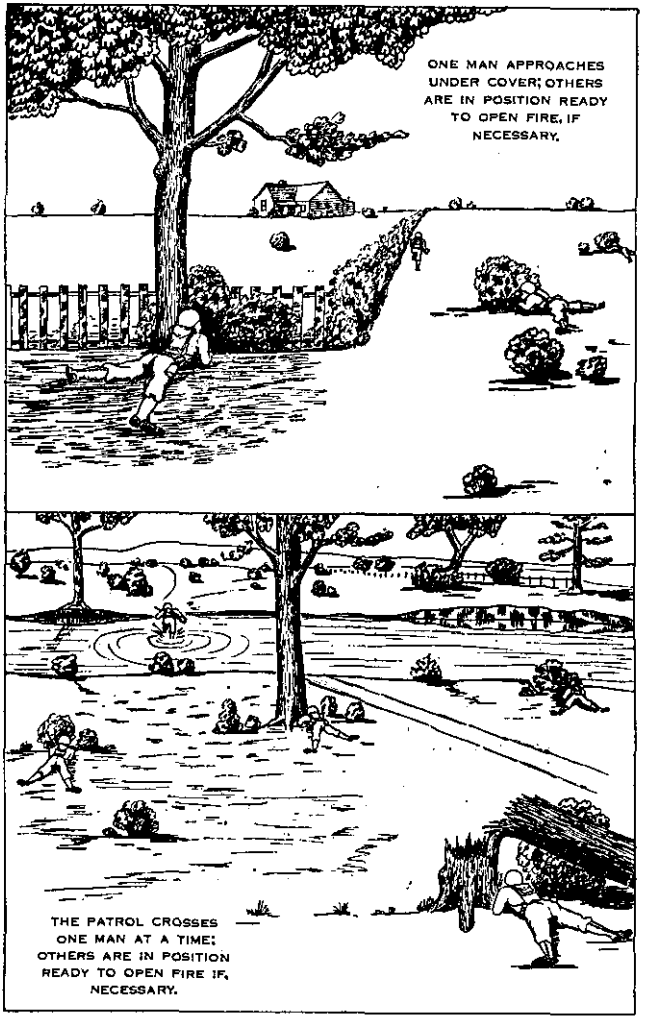


FIGURE 22.—Method of approaching house and of crossing stream.

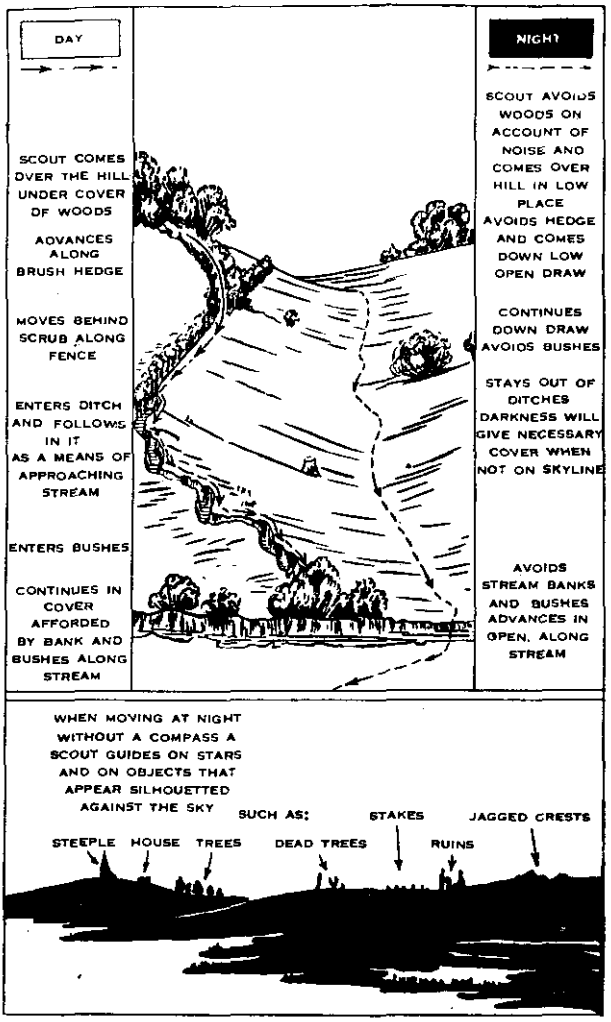


FIGURE 23.—Difference between correct routes over same ground by day and by night.

The patrol leader designates a get-away man to stay out of the fight so that he can return with the information obtained in case the other members of the patrol are killed or captured.

i. The patrol leader decides whether information gained is to be sent back at once by messenger or reported on the return of the patrol. An example of a message which a patrol leader might send back is shown in figure 24. After

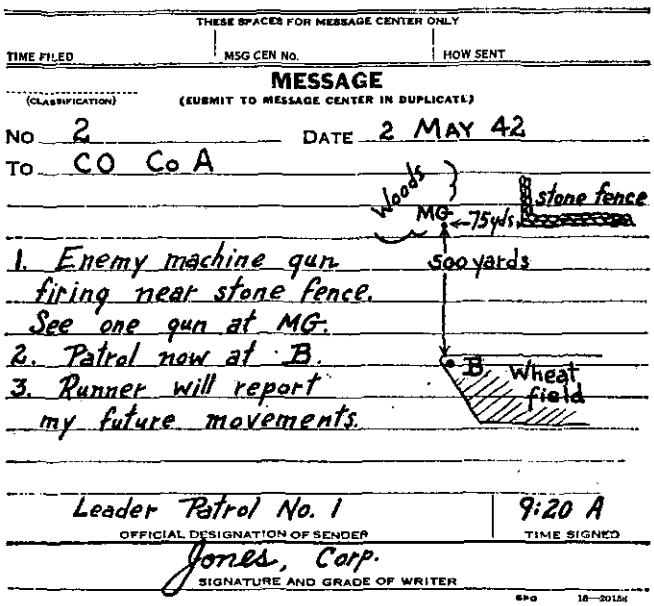


FIGURE 24.—Example of message.

the message is written, the patrol leader points out to the messenger the location of the stone fence, woods, and machine guns. He then is told what the patrol leader intends to do. This sketch can be made quickly and requires no special ability. It contains all necessary information. If the commanding officer of Company A wants to know what the patrol leader intends doing, the messenger can supply the

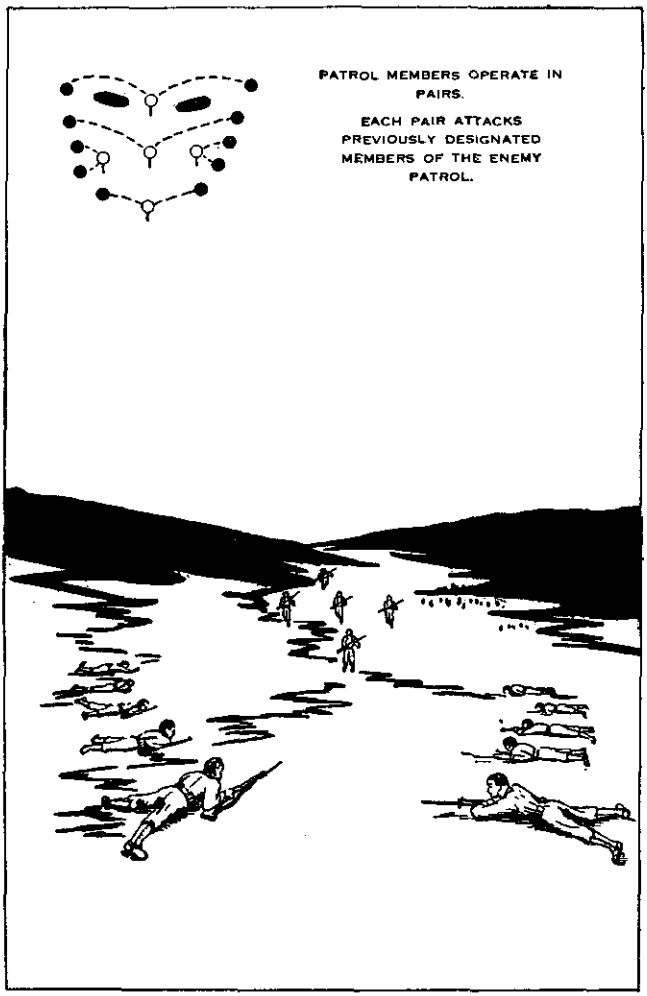


FIGURE 25.—Night ambush.

information. Thus, if the messenger and the message are captured by an enemy patrol there is nothing in the message to indicate where the patrol is *now* located. To have written "squad will remain at B" invites capture.

j. Since many night patrols are sent out to capture prisoners and execute tasks which may require combat, each patrol rehearses plans for night combat and laying ambushes until it is highly proficient. (See fig. 25.) Only through repeated rehearsals and training can each member of the patrol learn to do his part unhesitatingly and correctly, and thus gain confidence in the ability of the patrol as a unit. Failure to do this results in heavy losses.

■ 159. DEFENSE OF OBSTACLES.—*a.* A rifle squad, reinforced, frequently is detailed to cover an obstacle with fire. The members of the squad are so placed that they can sweep the outer edges of the obstacle by flanking fire.

b. When the squad is protecting a mine field, the squad leader establishes a warning patrol over the mine field area to prevent damage to friendly vehicles.

c. The men protecting the obstacle are concealed from hostile observation, and are placed at such distance from the obstacle as to be outside the zone of dispersion of artillery fire or dive bombing directed at the obstacle (200 to 400 yards). (See par. 131*a*(2).)

CHAPTER 7

WEAPONS PLATOON

		Paragraphs
SECTION I.	General	160–169
II.	Attack	170–181
III.	Defense	182–193

SECTION I

GENERAL

■ 160. COMPOSITION.—*a.* The weapons platoon consists of a platoon headquarters, one light machine-gun section, and one 60-mm mortar section. The platoon headquarters (command group) consists of a platoon leader, a platoon sergeant, a transport corporal, and several privates or privates first class (chauffeurs and messengers).

b. The light machine-gun section consists of a section headquarters and two light machine-gun squads. The 60-mm mortar section consists of a section headquarters and three mortar squads. Each section headquarters consists of a section leader (a sergeant) and several privates who are employed as needed, including employment as messengers. Each squad consists of a squad leader, gunner, assistant gunner, and ammunition bearers. In addition to individual weapons, each light machine-gun squad is equipped with one light machine gun and each mortar squad is equipped with one 60-mm mortar. Prior to combat, the light machine guns, the mortars, ammunition, and accessories are transported by motorized weapon carriers; during combat, they usually must be carried by hand.

■ 161. DUTIES OF PLATOON COMMAND GROUP.—*a. Platoon leader.*—The platoon leader is responsible for the training, discipline, control, and tactical employment of the platoon. His platoon must be trained tactically and technically to function effectively as a unit and as part of the military team. During route and approach march, the platoon leader leads his platoon, less any elements which have been detached. (See pars. 170 and 177*b*.) During combat, he em-

ploys the platoon as ordered by the company commander. The platoon leader keeps himself informed of the locations of the company command post, the elements of his platoon, the rifle platoons in the leading echelon of the company, and the carriers from which his ammunition is being obtained. When practicable, he supervises the fire of all elements of the platoon. When direct control of the action of both sections is impracticable, he supervises the action of one section as directed by the company commander. He may designate the platoon sergeant to supervise the other. The platoon leader is responsible for the supply of ammunition from the most advanced carriers, or other point designated by the company commander, to all elements not detached from the platoon. (See par. 201.)

b. Platoon sergeant.—The platoon sergeant is second-in-command. During movement he marches at the rear of the platoon and prevents straggling. During combat he takes charge of either weapon section when directed by the platoon leader; otherwise, he keeps constantly in touch with the situation to the rear and flanks of the platoon, supervises ammunition supply, assists the platoon leader as directed in observation and control of fire, and in displacements follows the foot elements of the rearmost echelon.

c. Transport corporal.—The transport corporal is in direct charge of the weapon carriers. He is responsible for their protection and the supervision of first echelon maintenance. For duties in connection with ammunition supply, see paragraph 201.

d. Messengers.—One messenger accompanies the platoon leader; another reports to the company commander when the company takes up a deployed formation. (See par. 8*b* (8).)

e. Chauffeurs.—Under the supervision of the transport corporal, chauffeurs conceal and camouflage their carriers at all halts. When separated from the sections, chauffeurs protect the carriers with automatic rifles or with their rifles, depending upon the equipment of the carriers. They are responsible for first echelon maintenance.

■ 162. DUTIES OF SECTION AND SQUAD LEADERS.—*a. General.*—Section and squad leaders are at all times responsible for the

training, discipline, appearance, and conduct of the members of their units.

b. Section leaders.—(1) Section leaders lead their sections in route and approach march. In combat, section leaders employ their sections in accordance with orders received from the platoon leader or company commander.

(2) They select and assign general locations for their squads within the area assigned their section, assign targets or sectors of fire to squads, regulate the displacement of the weapons, regulate the expenditure of ammunition, and insure its replenishment by the ammunition bearers (combined under section control whenever greater efficiency will result). Whenever the bearers are unable to maintain an adequate ammunition supply, they make timely requests for ammunition to the leader under whose orders the section is operating. The light machine-gun section leader usually exercises direct control over the fire of his section. The 60-mm mortar section leader conducts fire when the fire of more than one squad is directed on a target; otherwise, his principal duty is to observe closely the rifle troops and regulate the movement and positions of the mortar squads in accordance with the action and changing situation of the rifle elements.

c. *Squad leaders.*—Squad leaders are charged with the movement of their squads to designated locations; the selection, preparation, and occupation of firing positions; entrenchment; camouflage; observation and adjustment of fire; fire discipline; and the employment of ammunition bearers to replenish the ammunition supply.

■ 163. CONDUCT OF FIRE.—*a. Light machine-gun section.*—(1) The light machine-gun section may be assigned a definite target or a sector of fire. If assigned a definite target, the section leader determines the method of engaging it. As a general rule, most effective results are obtained by the simultaneous concentration of the fire of both guns on the same target. The section leader, in conformity with the platoon leader's orders, designates the targets, specifies the rate of fire, and gives the command or signal for opening fire. Whenever practicable, he establishes contact with the rifle unit leaders in his vicinity and informs himself as to their situation and intentions.

(2) If assigned a sector of fire, the section leader may divide the sector, giving a part to each squad, or he may engage targets in the entire sector by the fire of both squads.

(3) When the squads have been assigned sectors of fire, each squad leader takes, as his primary mission, fire on the targets developing in his own sector, and as a secondary mission, fire on those targets developing in the adjacent sector. When the squad leader acts entirely on his own initiative, he decides how he can best support the general plan of the company and leads his squad accordingly.

b. 60-mm mortar section.—Initial supply of ammunition for the mortars is limited and resupply is difficult. Consequently, the platoon leader or company commander usually determines the targets upon which fire is to be placed. Their orders may be to engage specific targets or to engage any of certain types of targets which appear in a prescribed sector or target area. In the absence of orders, squad and section leaders must rely on their own judgment and exercise proper initiative to furnish obviously needed fire support. During an attack, section and squad leaders must be alert to locate hidden machine guns that may open surprise fire on the advancing riflemen; the appearance of such a gun constitutes an emergency and requires that the squad leader engage it without orders.

■ 164. OBSERVATION.—*a. Light machine-gun section.*—The platoon leader provides for constant observation of the company zone of action and the terrain to the flanks. The section leader establishes his own observation post at a point from which he can observe his targets or sector of fire and control his squads. Squad leaders place themselves where they can observe their assigned sectors or targets and control the fire of their units by voice or arm-and-hand signals.

b. 60-mm mortar section.—Each mortar squad observation post must afford observation of friendly troops and observation over the target area or sector of fire. It must be within voice or arm-and-hand signaling distance of the mortar position and should be at or as near the position as possible. Usually one of the squad observation posts will serve for the section leader.

■ 165. ANTIMECHANIZED DEFENSE.—*a. Light machine-gun section.*—(1) When practicable, standing type one-man foxholes or similar entrenchments are prepared for every man. (See fig. 31 and FM 5–15.) The three foxholes for members of the crew are arranged generally as indicated in figure 33. When time does not permit the construction of entrenchments, the maximum security is obtained by locating firing positions among large trees, boulders, or other natural antitank obstacles.

(2) For action to be taken in case of mechanized attack, in route and approach march, bivouacs and assembly areas, and in attack, see paragraph 9c.

(3) For action to be taken in case of mechanized attack, in defense, see paragraph 71.

(4) Light machine-gun squads may be employed to cover antitank obstacles such as road blocks and mine fields to prevent removal by the enemy. Positions selected to perform such a mission should be from 200 to 400 yards from the obstacle and well concealed. Ammunition bearers, or attached riflemen, are so located as to observe approaches and prevent hostile patrols nearing the position without coming under observation and fire.

b. 60–mm mortar section.—Mortars are emplaced, whenever possible, so as to take advantage of natural tank obstacles. In defense, standing type one-man foxholes or similar entrenchments are dug for each member of the section. (See fig. 31 and FM 5–15.) The foxholes for the mortar crew are arranged approximately as shown in figure 35. Upon the close approach of hostile tanks, mortars are dismounted and individuals take cover within their foxholes or, if the shortage of time has not permitted the construction of protective trenches, in any nearby holes or narrow ditches or among boulders or other natural antitank obstacles. When the hostile threat has passed, mortars are remounted and personnel resume their normal positions.

■ 166. ANTIAIRCRAFT SECURITY.—The characteristics of the light machine gun, with its present mount, make it of slight value as an antiaircraft weapon. The platoon relies for security primarily on passive measures including dispersion, concealment, and use of cover. (See pars. 9c and 72.)

■ 167. SIGNAL COMMUNICATION.—*a.* In the weapons platoon and its elements the usual means of signal communication are messengers and arm-and-hand signals. For use of telephones, see paragraph 212.

b. Fire and movement of the squads and sections are normally controlled by voice and arm-and-hand signals. As required, a messenger from each section is sent to platoon headquarters. When operating as part of the section, squad leaders place themselves so that they can see both the target and the section leader.

■ 168. WEAPON CARRIER LOADS AND AMMUNITION SUPPLY.—The weapon carriers transport the weapons of the platoon and ammunition for each weapon in the amount prescribed in Table of Basic Allowances. For loads of individual vehicles, see FM 7–55. For ammunition supply, see paragraph 201.

■ 169. ROUTE MARCH AND BIVOUAC.—*a.* In route march, the weapons platoon (less weapon carriers) marches in the company column as directed by the company commander.

b. Except as indicated in c below, the weapon carriers and their accompanying personnel move with the battalion transport.

c. When the company has a security mission (such as support of an advance guard or flank guard) or other mission requiring complete readiness for action, the weapon carriers march with the company under direct control of the platoon leader.

d. The location and missions of the platoon in bivouac are assigned by the company commander. (See par. 10.)

SECTION II

ATTACK

■ 170. APPROACH MARCH.—*a. General.*—When the platoon is to march as a unit, the company commander prescribes its place in the company formation and informs the platoon leader whether the platoon transport is to move with the platoon or with the battalion transport. He also prescribes a march objective and, usually, a rifle element on which the platoon is to guide. He indicates any special mission which

the platoon is to perform or to be prepared to perform. When the elements of the platoon are to be distributed for the execution of tactical missions, he prescribes missions for each section and directs where each is to march in the company

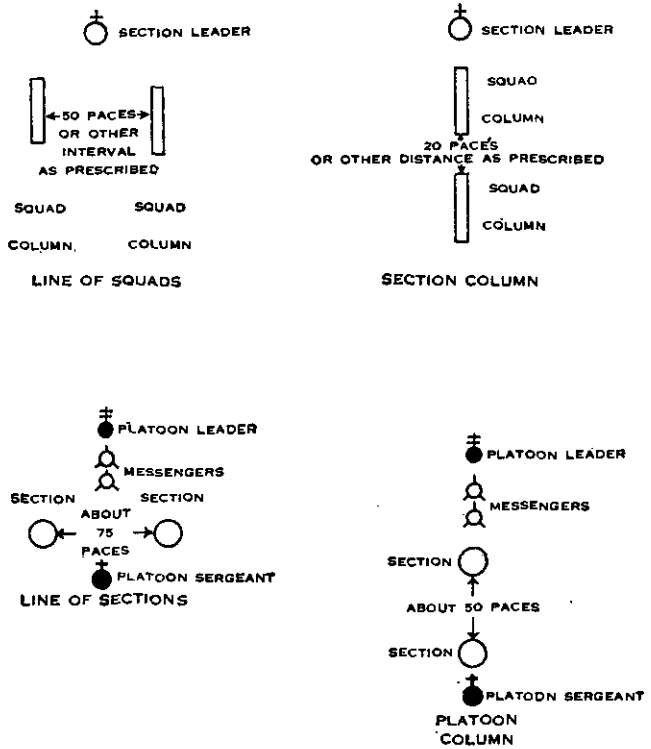


FIGURE 26.—Dispositions of weapons squads and sections in approach march.

formation, or he attaches certain squads or sections to rifle platoons. Sections or squads assigned specific tactical missions may be required to carry weapons and a small supply of ammunition by hand. Mortar squads move to successive positions in readiness, and when two or more squads operate

together, at least one squad is prepared to occupy a previously reconnoitered position and open fire promptly.

b. Dispositions.—(1) In either "platoon column" or "line of sections," the sections may be in line of squads or in section column. (See fig. 26.) The formations and movements of the platoon, section, and squad conform generally to those described for the rifle platoon and squad in paragraphs 106 and 142, respectively. (See fig. 18 ① and ②.)

(2) The platoon leader studies the terrain and orders such initial dispositions of the platoon, less any detached elements, as will best enable him to screen his unit from hostile observation, move it so as to avoid or minimize the effect of hostile fire, and retain the greatest practicable degree of control over all platoon elements. He varies dispositions throughout the approach march in accordance with changes in the nature of the terrain and the situation. Section leaders place their sections in the company formation and take up initial formations as directed by the platoon leader. Thereafter section leaders may change formation whenever necessary to maintain control, take advantage of cover, or reduce losses.

(3) (*a*) Where conditions do not permit rapid movement of the carriers, the foot elements and the carriers may move together. On open ground, in daylight, the carriers are usually moved by bounds in rear of the foot elements. At the end of each bound the carriers should be halted in defilade from flat-trajectory fire and, if possible, in small gullies or swales for protection against shell fragments.

(*b*) At night, weapon carriers are usually held in rear and moved forward, under battalion or regimental control, in time to reach the assembly area shortly after the foot elements.

c. Contact.—If the platoon, section, or squad is directed to guide on another unit, connecting files (preferably double) should be employed whenever the terrain or lack of visibility make it likely that visual contact may be broken.

d. Movement by bounds.—(1) Movement in daylight approach march takes place in a series of bounds. The platoon leader designates a base section and indicates its initial march objective or directs it to guide on another unit. If one section is detached, the remaining section is given appropriate instructions as to direction, bounds, and objectives.

When an assigned march objective cannot be pointed out, intermediate platoon march objectives are designated. (See par. 109*d*.)

(2) The platoon leader, accompanied by the command group, precedes the platoon along the route of march. He frequently moves with the company command group. When absent from the platoon, he leaves the platoon sergeant in charge and maintains contact with him by sight, connecting files, or messenger. He observes the route of advance and the next terrain objective of the company for possible off-carrier positions and for suitable firing position areas, so that he can promptly place his platoon in action in the event the company becomes engaged with the enemy. He reconnoiters for crossings or minor detours by which the weapon carriers may pass obstacles. He detours the platoon around gassed areas and, if practicable, around areas being shelled. In order to cross dangerous areas such as roads or ridges which are exposed to hostile observation, he may prescribe a single rush in line of skirmishers; each section may be closely followed by its carriers or the latter may be directed to cross the area, in line and at high speed, when the foot elements have crossed.

(3) Areas under fire, when they cannot be avoided, are crossed by rushes of individuals or small groups under control of section leaders. When under enemy observation, sections and squads adopt formations similar to those used by rifle units under the same conditions.

(4) If a section is detached from the platoon, the section leader should precede his unit by a short distance and conduct reconnaissance similar to that prescribed for the platoon leader.

■ 171. PREPARATIONS IN ASSEMBLY AREAS.—See paragraphs 14 and 106*i*.

■ 172. RECONNAISSANCE.—*a. Platoon leader.*—(1) The company commander either may take the weapons platoon leader on reconnaissance or direct him to reconnoiter for specific information. (See par. 16*d* (2).) Frequently, however, the platoon leader may have only general information of his missions and no opportunity for detailed reconnaissance,

prior to the issuance of the company attack order. (See pars. 17*h* and 18*b* (5).)

(2) The weapons platoon leader makes his personal reconnaissance and completes his plan of attack in a manner similar to that described for the rifle platoon leader. (See par. 107*b* and c.) He allows sufficient time—

(*a*) For his noncommissioned officers to reconnoiter and select firing positions, targets, and target areas for weapons that are to be emplaced at the start of the attack or to observe the ground over which weapons must be advanced when the initial mission is to follow a designated rifle unit.

(*b*) For all squads to occupy initial positions and complete preparations for initial missions.

(c) For mortar squads to locate observation posts from which fire can be adjusted on initial target areas by arm-and-hand signals.

(3) While waiting for his section leaders to report for orders, the platoon leader can often speed up preparations for the attack by personally selecting observation posts or firing positions for that section whose complete readiness at the hour of attack is most important in carrying out the company commander's plan. This should be done whether that section is later to be under his control or not.

(4) The platoon leader issues timely instructions for the forward movement of the platoon. Unless the company commander has directed that the off-carrier position be located in the assembly area or at a more forward location, the platoon leader must select the off-carrier position and the most forward point to which ammunition can be brought by carrier. (See figs. 3 and 29.) At the completion of his reconnaissance the platoon leader meets his section leaders and issues his attack order.

b. Section leaders.—Having received the platoon leader's orders, each section leader precedes his section to the position area, notes the location of the front-line troops, locates his targets or target area, selects an observation post for the section, and selects general locations for his weapons. He also selects cover positions and directs the movement of the squads and their weapons from off-carrier positions to the cover positions.

■ 173. SELECTION OF FIRING POSITIONS.—*a. Light machine-gun section.*—Light machine-gun positions are selected to permit direct fire on the target or targets assigned, or to cover an assigned sector of fire. If possible, locations for light machine guns should permit fire, with only a slight change of position, on actual or suspected locations of hostile machine guns sited to take advancing units of the company under cross fires. The location of the front-line troops and the target must be visible from the firing positions. Whenever practicable, cover in rear of the firing positions (for cover positions see par 2*e*(2)) should be available to facilitate the supply of ammunition and to provide shelter for the gun crews when not firing. From this cover position there should be a covered route to any alternate position selected. When possible, the firing positions should afford protection against hostile observation and fire from all directions other than that in which the gun is to fire. (See fig. 27.) Gun positions are separated by a sufficient interval, ordinarily 50 yards, to safeguard against both guns being hit by the burst of the same projectile. However, the positions should permit the section leader to control the fire by voice or arm-and-hand signals. In selecting positions the location of other troops in the area must be considered, so as to avoid congestion. Occupation of positions in zones of adjacent companies is subject to the restriction that the fire or movement of units of those companies must not be impeded.

b. 60-mm mortar section.—(1) The firing positions of the mortars must be within effective range of the targets and within voice or arm-and-hand signaling distance of a point affording observation of the targets and friendly front-line troops. In the selection of firing positions the section leader also considers the location of friendly troops, and the requirements of cover, separation of weapons, ease of control, and facility of ammunition supply as mentioned above for the light machine guns.

(2) Whenever practicable, mortars fire from fully defiladed positions just in rear of the friendly front line. Because of the necessity of keeping the mortars well forward, firing positions are frequently located in shell holes, ditches, or folds in the ground.

■ 174. ORDERS.—*a. Platoon leader.*—The scope of the weapons platoon leader's orders varies widely in different situations. His orders include as much of the following as is necessary for the intelligent functioning of subordinates:

FIGURE 27.—Light machine-gun firing position.

(1) Information of the enemy and our own troops, including the contemplated action of the leading rifle platoons of the company and the positions and missions of the machine guns and mortars of the battalion heavy weapons company.

(2) Attachments, if any, to rifle platoons.

(3) Detachments, if any, to direct control of company commander.

(4) Missions of the sections, to include—

(*a*) Initial position areas and, where necessary, the route or unit to be followed thereto.

(*b*) Initial targets or sectors of fire.

(*c*) Time of opening fire.

(*d*) Subsequent action.

(5) Instructions concerning supply of ammunition.

(6) Location of the battalion aid station and any other administrative instructions.

(7) Instructions concerning signal communication, including prearranged signals.

(8) Location of platoon leader and company commander.

b. Section and squad leaders.—(1) Section leaders promptly notify any squad leader whose squad is attached to a rifle unit. Attack orders of section leaders to squad leaders remaining under their command include: necessary information of the enemy and friendly troops; mission(s) of the section; general location of each squad's firing position and any instructions concerning movement to it; each squad's target(s) or sector of fire; any restrictions on the opening or conduct of fire; any instructions concerning ammunition supply; prearranged signals, if any; and the location of the battalion aid station, section and platoon leaders, and the company commander.

(2) Each squad leader includes in his attack order all items of the section leader's order which pertain to his squad or its members. After the initial firing position has been occupied he issues the fire order for engaging the first target.

c. Fragmentary orders.—Platoon, section, and squad leaders frequently issue their attack orders in fragmentary form, particularly when all or part of the unit is initially to follow a rifle element of the company. Such items as the location of firing positions, targets or sectors of fire, and so on, are

then frequently not issued until the vicinity of the initial firing position has been reached.

■ 175. MOVEMENT INTO FIRING POSITION.—From the off-carrier position sections move by hand to cover positions designated by section leaders. (See par. 2*e* (2) and (3).) Upon receipt of his section leader's order, each squad leader conducts his squad to the assigned position area, selects the exact position for his gun or mortar, directs and supervises the occupation of the firing position, and issues his fire orders. In moving to firing positions, squads make all possible use of cover and concealment so as to get their weapons into action without being discovered by the enemy. Ammunition bearers usually remain in cover positions when not delivering ammunition.

■ 176. TARGETS.—For appropriate targets for light machine guns and mortars, see paragraphs 2*c* (1) and (2) and 163.

■ 177. SUPPORTING FIRES DURING ATTACK.—*a. General.*—For the tactical employment of light machine guns and 60-mm mortars during attack and pursuit, see paragraphs 21*d* and 25*b*.

b. Control.—Whenever the platoon leader is controlling the platoon as a unit, his position should, if practicable, be close enough to the company commander to facilitate ready intercommunication between them. When the company commander detaches one section to operate under his own control, the platoon leader accompanies and controls the remaining section.

c. Light machine-gun section.—(1) In the attack the light machine guns are usually employed under company control. The missions assigned the light machine-gun squads in the attack generally will be one or more of the following:

(*a*) To support, by fire, rifle units of their own company or adjacent companies. Frequently the section is directed to follow a specified rifle unit, or a general route along a flank of the company, and occupy successive firing positions to accomplish this mission.

(*b*) To protect the flanks of the company.

(*c*) To cover the reorganization of the company.

(*d*) To break up hostile counterattacks.

(2) The section leader, or platoon leader if he is controlling the section, must be constantly in touch with the situation on the nearest flank of the company and alert for opportunities to maneuver his squads to positions from which flanking or oblique fire may be delivered on enemy groups holding up the advance of rifle units.

d. 60-mm mortar section.—During the attack, the mission of the section and squad leaders is to have their mortars in position with observation established so as to be able promptly and effectively to take under fire those targets assigned by the company commander or platoon leader. Squad leaders are particularly alert to engage targets which are too close to friendly troops to permit the employment of artillery or 81-mm mortars against them.

■ 178. DISPLACEMENT.—*a.* When the mission assigned can no longer be effectively accomplished from the initial firing position, the section leader effects a displacement of his unit. The displacement must be regulated so as to cause as little interruption as possible in the continuity of fire support. Sections may move forward as a unit during a lull in the fighting or when continuous support is not required. When the leading rifle echelon is in motion or when continuous fire support is required for other reasons, displacement is by squad echelon. Squads remaining in position take over the fire missions of those moving forward. Planning ahead for displacement begins as soon as squads occupy initial firing positions and are ready to fire. When advancing by squad echelon, the section or platoon leader, followed by the first echelon, goes forward to select the new positions. He prescribes the time the rear echelon will displace, or he may signal it forward. When the section or platoon advances as a unit, the leader, accompanied by a messenger, moves forward to reconnoiter the new positions. After locating the general position area, he selects a cover position nearby, and by signals or messenger directs the squads or sections to move to the cover position. Squad leaders conduct their squads to the designated point. In moving forward all squads make use of available cover, concealment, and defiladed routes.

b. When detached from his section, a squad leader advances his squad to new positions when the progress of the

attack makes it impossible to continue firing on the assigned mission or sector from the old position. Forward displacement must be made aggressively, the squad frequently moving close behind or on the flank of the leading echelon of a rifle platoon.

■ 179. SUPPORTING FIRES DURING ASSAULT.—When the advance of the assaulting echelon of the company masks their supporting fires, sections shift fires as follows:

a. Light machine guns—to hostile elements on the flanks of the position being assaulted, in order to neutralize their cross fires on the assaulting riflemen. Squad leaders shift fires on their own initiative, if not ordered to do so by the section leader.

b. 60-mm mortars—to suitable targets in adjacent or rearward hostile positions which open fire on the assaulting riflemen. (See par. 163.)

■ 180. REORGANIZATION.—*a.* As soon as a hostile position is captured or the attack is halted for any reason, the company commander or platoon leader directs section leaders to positions from which their weapons can protect the front and flanks of the leading rifle platoons against counterattack during reorganization. In the absence of orders, section leaders take prompt action to insure this protection.

b. Section leaders replace squad leaders and key men who have become casualties and report their strength and ammunition requirements to the platoon leader, or, if detached from the platoon, to the company commander. Reconnaissance for positions to support a resumption of the attack is commenced promptly by the platoon and sections leaders.

■ 181. NIGHT EMPLOYMENT.—*a.* Under conditions of reduced visibility the effectiveness of the light machine gun and 60-mm mortar as weapons of opportunity is correspondingly reduced. At night they are seldom employed except in the execution of prearranged fires.

b. The light machine guns and 60-mm mortars are not ordinarily employed for supporting fires during a night attack. (See par. 34.) Sections move to the objective as directed by the company commander. During darkness approximate position areas are located. Section leaders should be prepared

to select and prepare the actual firing positions quickly in the semidaylight available at dawn.

SECTION III

DEFENSE

182. GENERAL.—*a. Light machine guns.*—(1) In order to coordinate their action with the battalion plan of defensive fires, the battalion order assigns the locations, sectors of fire, and final protective line of the light machine guns placed in close support of the main line of resistance; and the locations and missions for light machine guns located in rear of the main line of resistance. The commander of the heavy weapons company may be charged by the battalion commander with the coordination of the light machine guns with the heavy machine guns. A reserve company's light machine guns initially emplaced in rear of the main line of resistance are released to the company when it is ordered to counterattack.

(2) Whenever practicable, the light machine guns are emplaced within their company defense areas for the execution of their missions.

(3) The orders to the light machine-gun section include the limits of its assigned sector of fire; the direction of the final protective line, if the section is covering a part of the main line of resistance; when to open or withhold fire; and other instructions necessary to meet any probable enemy action.

b. 60-mm mortars.—(1) The mission of 60-mm mortars of a front-line rifle company in defense is to fill with fire small gaps in the final protective lines of the machine guns not covered by 81-mm mortar, artillery, or other fires, and to place fires in defiladed areas in front of the position to break up the hostile attack before it reaches the battle position. When the enemy penetrates a portion of the main line of resistance, the 60-mm mortars fire on enemy forces trying to deepen or widen the gap and also fire in support of friendly counterattacks.

(2) Whenever observation can be obtained over the front and flanks of the company area from a single locality, all mortars are emplaced so that fires can be conducted by cen-

tralized control. When necessary, because of lack of suitable observation or positions from which the whole company sector can be covered, squads are attached to rifle platoons. The company commander's order for the defense designates the mortar units to be attached to rifle platoons and those that are to be held under company control. When a mortar squad is attached to a rifle platoon, the rifle platoon leader directs its action. However, primary target areas (final protective fires) are assigned the squads by the company commander and take precedence over other fires.

(3) The 60-mm mortars of the reserve company may be used initially in close support of the main line of resistance, provided they can be made available to the reserve company when that company is committed. When the reserve company occupies a prepared position the 60-mm mortars are attached to rifle platoons or held under company control as for a front-line company. When the reserve company counterattacks, the 60-mm mortars are employed as in attack.

■ 183. RECONNAISSANCE.—Section leaders precede their sections to position areas to receive the platoon leader's order. They reconnoiter for and select firing positions before issuing their orders.

■ 184. SELECTION OF FIRING POSITIONS.—*a. General.*—In the defense, primary and alternate firing positions are prepared for light machine guns and 60-mm mortars. Supplementary firing positions are prepared as required. (See par. 2*e*(1).)

b. Light machine guns.—(1) The mission assigned the squad governs the selection of firing positions. Other factors in selecting a position are:

(*a*) Safety for gun and personnel (cover and concealment).

(*b*) Routes of approach for the occupation of the position and for the supply of the position after occupation.

(*c*) Availability of one or more alternate positions.

(2) Missions for light machine guns located in the rear part of the battalion area include limiting likely penetrations, fire into forward platoon defense areas should these be captured by the enemy, and flank protection of the battalion. Supplementary positions usually will be required.

c. 60-mm mortars.—Firing positions selected for the mortars must—

(1) Be defiladed from hostile view.

(2) Permit the accomplishment of the assigned missions.

(3) Provide observation close to the mortar position. The mortar should be emplaced within approximately 100 yards of the observer. The firing positions should be well forward and included in or be directly protected by the rifle platoon defense areas. Ammunition bearers armed with carbines afford close protection. The mortar observer is located within easy signaling distanse of the company commander or platoon leader, depending upon which is controlling the fire. If attached to a rifle platoon, the observer's position is near the rifle platoon leader.

■ 185. SECTORS OF FIRE AND TARGET AREAS.—*a.* The two light machine-gun squads are usually employed by section and assigned the same sector of fire. Both guns are sited to fire as nearly as possible on the same final protective line. In a defense in woods it may be necessary to employ the guns singly in order to avoid clearing obvious fire lanes.

b. Each 60-mm mortar squad is assigned a sector of fire, one primary target area, and any number of secondary target areas. The company commander assigns primary target areas. The weapons platoon leader assigns secondary target areas and sectors of fire in accordance with the company plan of defense. Rifle platoon leaders assign these for mortar squads attached to their platoons. Target areas should not exceed approximately 50 by 50 yards. Mortar squads attached to rifle platoons include in their sectors of fire the frontage of the rifle platoon.

■ 186. ORDERS.—*a.* Orders of the platoon or section leaders may include—

(1) Essential information of the enemy.

(2) Location of the main line of resistance and security forces.

(3) Primary and alternate firing positions.

(4) Sectors of fire. Also final protective lines for light machine guns on the main line of resistance, and primary and secondary target areas for all mortars.

(5) Supplementary firing positions (if any) and missions to be fired.

(6) Organization of the ground, including type of emplacements and accessory defenses to be constructed.

(7) Instructions concerning ammunition supply.

(8) Instructions for opening fires.

(9) Instructions for final protective fires (fires on final protective lines and on primary target areas) to include—signal for this fire, location from which signal will be given, and rates and duration of fire.

(10) Location of battalion aid station.

(11) Location of company and platoon command posts and of section leaders.

b. The squad leader bases his orders on those of the section or platoon leader. He indicates the exact spot on which the gun or mortar is to be mounted and directs clearing of fields of fire and the preparation and camouflage of primary, alternate, and supplementary firing positions.

■ 187. OCCUPATION AND ORGANIZATION OF FIRING POSITIONS.—*a. Arrival at position.*—Upon arrival at the firing position each light machine gun and mortar is mounted, concealed, and camouflaged in an emergency firing position prepared to open fire at once and to cover its assigned sector of fire.

b. Light machine-gun section.—(1) Work is begun on primary emplacements, clearing fields of fire, and distributing ammunition to the firing positions. The two guns should be placed at least 30 yards apart. (See par. 165.) When the necessary clearing for the primary position is completed, similar work is commenced on alternate emplacements. Supplementary emplacements are next in priority.

(2) Natural cover, drainage lines, ditches, and other defilade are used for communication and movement to alternate and supplementary positions. Dummy positions are coordinated with those of the rifle units located in the area.

(3) Range cards are prepared by squad leaders for each firing position. Preparations are made to lay the guns and fire on final protective lines both from primary and alternate firing positions.

(4) For details of defensive works, see FM 5–15; for preparation of range cards, see FM 23–45.

c. *60-mm mortar section.*—(1) As soon as the mortars are mounted in temporary positions, the actual positions are constructed, camouflaged, and stocked with ammunition; and the mortars are mounted in these positions. (See figs. 35 and 36.) The primary mortar position and the observation post are first constructed and then shelter for the ammunition bearers. Alternate positions are constructed in a similar manner. The alternate position should be sufficiently far from the primary position to be out of the zone of fire directed at the primary position (usually about 50–100 yards) and have a covered route of movement to it. Supplementary positions are also prepared as necessary. (See par. 165.)

(2) Firing data are recorded by each squad leader as described in FM 23–85; one copy of each range card is furnished the officer directing the fire. For coordination of defensive fires, see paragraphs 66*d* and 67. The weapons platoon leader prepares and furnishes the company commander with a sketch showing the prepared mortar fires. (See fig. 28.)

d. Camouflage.—Camouflage is executed concurrently with the construction of the defensive works. Spoil not used in parapets is disposed of as soon as dug. Parapets are tramped down and sodded as fast as they are finished. The making of new paths ending at installations is avoided.

■ 188. STORAGE OF AMMUNITION AT FIRING POSITIONS.—Ammunition placed at the firing positions of the light machine guns and 60-mm mortars in a defensive situation should be protected in ammunition shelters constructed at or near the position. Ammunition shelters may be provided by extending the emplacement to either side and roofing the top of the ditch with light logs and earth, suitably camouflaged, or by tunneling out to provide storage space. The floor of the ammunition shelter should be slightly higher than the floor of the emplacement and sloping to provide drainage. The essential requirements for ammunition are that it be convenient for the gun crew, and be kept dry and concealed.

■ 189. POSITION OF LEADERS.—*a. Platoon.*—The platoon leader takes position where he can best observe and control the units of the platoon under his control. His position

should permit easy communication with the company commander.

b. Section.—During combat, section leaders select a position from which they can best observe the sector of fire

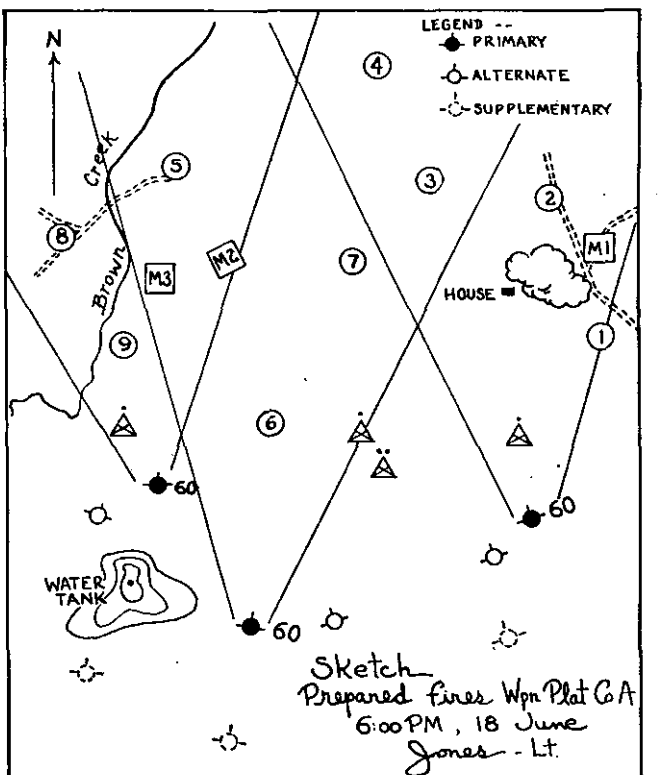


FIGURE 28.—Sketch showing prepared mortar fires.

assigned the section and control the actions of their squads. The light machine-gun section leader directs and controls fire and gives specific orders as to when the guns should switch to final protective fires. When two or more mortars

are grouped together, the 60-mm mortar section leader usually remains with this group.

c. *Squad.*—(1) Each light machine-gun squad leader stations himself close to and in rear of the gun position. He supervises the actions of the gun crew and ammunition carriers. He observes the fire for effect and directs adjustment.

(2) In combat the mortar squad leader is the observer. He locates his observation post near, or within easy signaling distance of, the commander controlling the fire of his mortar.

■ 190. CONDUCT OF THE DEFENSE.—*a. Light machine-gun section.*—(1) Fires of all guns on the main line of resistance are withheld until the enemy is within 500 yards. As the enemy attack advances, the light machine-gun section engages any suitable targets in its sector of fire. Individual scouts preceding the hostile attack are not remunerative machine-gun targets. As the enemy closes with the position, guns are fired on their final protective lines. Final protective fires may be released upon pyrotechnic signals sent up by front-line commanders or upon orders of higher commanders. Whenever the guns are not firing they are laid on their final protective line.

(2) When final protective fires are called for from the front line, only those machine guns open fire whose final protective lines protect the unit calling for such fire.

(*a*) When visibility is good the section leader determines the rate and duration of fire on final protective lines.

(*b*) Under conditions of reduced visibility, the company order may specify the rate and duration of fire. In the absence of instructions, the usual section rate is 125 rounds per minute for two minutes and then 60 rounds per minute until ordered to cease fire. The latter rate of fire is maintained by firing single shots.

(3) Light machine guns (usually those of the reserve company) located in the rear part of the battalion defense area are assigned the missions of stopping any hostile elements which succeed in breaking through the main line of resistance, stopping a hostile envelopment, or supporting counterattacks.

(4) Because of certain limitations of mount and gun, the light machine guns are rarely employed for long-range fires or for antiaircraft fires.

(5) In event of a hostile penetration of a portion of the main line of resistance, light machine guns fire on the hostile troops within their sectors of fire. They support friendly counterattacks in accordance with the plan of attack developed by the company commander of the reserve company. As the enemy is forced out of the salient he is pursued by fire.

(6) Leaders of the light machine-gun section and squads observe the hostile approaches within assigned sectors, including flanks and rear. Once he appears, the enemy is kept under direct observation. The leaders strive to take the enemy under the combination of surprise and flanking fire.

b. 60-mm mortar section.—(1) When not firing on other targets, mortars are laid to fire on their primary target areas.

(2) The fire plan includes conditions under which fires are released; conditions for moving to supplementary positions; conditions for firing on primary target areas, special signals for such fire, and location from which the signal will be fired or given.

(3) During periods of visibility the section (or squad) leader determines the rate and duration of fire on primary target areas. Where final protective fires are called for during periods of reduced visibility, only those mortars open fire whose primary target areas are in support of the area calling for such fire. The company order may state the rate and duration of fire under conditions of low visibility. In the absence of instructions the usual rate is 9 rounds per minute for two minutes and thereafter 6 rounds per minute until ordered to cease fire.

(4) When an ample ammunition supply is available at the various positions, squad and section leaders may be authorized to take favorable targets of opportunity under fire. Squads attached to rifle platoons will normally place fires on orders of the rifle platoon leader, except when firing on their primary target area; squads not so attached receive fire missions directly from the company commander or from the weapons platoon leader.

(5) Except when firing on the primary target area, squad leaders are authorized to move to an alternate position when

the effects of hostile fire indicate that the move will insure a more certain continuance of the fire mission.

■ 191. AMMUNITION SUPPLY.—For ammunition supply in the defense, see paragraph 201*d*.

■ 192. NIGHT EMPLOYMENT.—*a.* (1) At night the light machine guns of front-line rifle companies are laid on their final protective lines. In case of a raid or night attack, machine gunners deliver final protective fires to break up the assault.

(2) Light machine guns of rear areas may be ordered to occupy supplementary positions in close support of the main line of resistance at night to cover probable enemy approaches.

b. The mortar squad and section prepare and record fire data during daylight. They fire for adjustment when permitted.

■ 193. WITHDRAWAL.—*a. Night.*—In a night withdrawal one light machine gun and one or two 60-mm mortars may be left in position with the company covering force. (See fig. 10 ① and ②.) Only two men stay with each weapon left with the covering force. It is desirable that carriers be available close by for expediting the withdrawal of these personnel and weapons. The remainder of the weapons platoon withdraws with the rifle company.

b. Daylight.—(1) *Light machine-gun section.*—(*a*) In a daylight withdrawal, the light machine guns are employed by the company commander to cover the withdrawal of the company. When the company withdraws by platoon the light machine-gun section may be withdrawn first to a position from which it can cover the gaps created by the withdrawal of platoons. The section then withdraws under protection of rifle elements.

(*b*) When the company withdraws platoons simultaneously by thinning from all platoons, the light machine guns initially may be held to cover the entire company front. They withdraw with the last of the rifle elements from the forward position. The two gun squads withdraw singly, one gun moving to a rear covering position established by rifle elements of the company, the other gun remaining in place until the first gun is in the rear position.

(*c*) Battalion supporting weapons in the rifle company area may be attached to the company for the withdrawal. The

actions of the light machine guns are coordinated with any attached heavy machine guns.

(2) *60-mm mortar section.*—During a daylight withdrawal, mortar squads usually are attached to rifle platoons. They effect their withdrawal under the order of the rifle platoon leader. When employed as a section the withdrawal is under the direction of the weapons platoon leader.

CHAPTER 8

ADMINISTRATION

	Paragraphs
SECTION I. Supply	194–203
II. Medical service and evacuation	204–207
III. Motor maintenance	208

SECTION I

SUPPLY

■ 194. REFERENCES.—For definitions, fundamentals, and methods relating to supply, see FM 100–10; for logistical data, see FM 7–55 and 101–10; for supply within the infantry regiment, see FM 7–30 and 7–40.

■ 195. RESPONSIBILITY.—Supply is a responsibility of command. This responsibility cannot be delegated. The company is the basic unit with administrative functions. The company commander is responsible for making timely requests for supplies and for distributing supplies received to the members of his company. He is also responsible for the supply of attached units or personnel.

■ 196. MEANS.—*a. Personnel.*—The administration group in company headquarters consists of the following personnel, whose duties and locations are as indicated:

(1) *Mess sergeant, cooks, and cooks' helpers.*—The mess sergeant is responsible for checking the rations and water issued the company, the division of rations into meals, the supervision of the cooks and cooks' helpers in the preparation of meals, and the distribution of meals to the company. Usually he and his assistants are in the regimental train bivouac, working under the direct supervision of the service company commander.

(2) *Supply sergeant and armorer-artificer.*—The supply sergeant is responsible for checking and distributing supplies, except rations and water. He keeps the company commander informed of the company needs. He also supervises the work of the armorer-artificer. During combat the supply sergeant will usually be in the forward area in order to assist the com-

pany commander in matters relating to supply, particularly ammunition supply. The armorer-artificer will usually be in the train bivouac where he assists in the procurement and distribution of supplies, executes minor repairs on weapons, and performs simple carpentry tasks.

(3) *Company clerk.*—The company clerk keeps the company records. As a member of the regimental personnel section he is employed under the personnel officer. In the field the personnel section may be separated from the regiment, and operate and move with the rear echelon of the division or corps; otherwise, it operates in the regimental train bivouac.

b. Transportation.—(1) The company transport comprises those vehicles organically assigned to the company. Ordinarily these vehicles are used to transport the weapons, ammunition, and certain personnel of the weapons platoon. Their employment in ammunition supply is discussed in paragraph 201.

(2) Vehicles of the battalion section of the kitchen and baggage train are allotted to the companies. These vehicles carry organizational equipment, rations, water, and other impedimenta not carried on company transport. When part of their organic loads have been dumped, kitchen and baggage train vehicles may be used to haul the individual rolls of personnel.

(3) One or more vehicles of the battalion ammunition train are allotted to the rifle company. Initially this transportation carries loads of small-arms ammunition and special ammunition (mortar, grenades, and pyrotechnics) in quantities prescribed in the Table of Basic Allowances. Their employment in ammunition supply is discussed in paragraph 201.

■ 197. CLASS I SUPPLY.—*a. General.*—(1) Rations and water are the principal items of class I supply for the company. These items are consumed at a relatively uniform daily rate irrespective of combat operations.

(2) A ration is the allowance of food for one person for one day. The field ration is ordinarily issued in time of war, national emergency, or during field training. It is issued in kind; its components and substitutes are prescribed by the War Department or by the commander of the field forces.

It may consist of field rations A, B, C, or D, or combinations of these. See FM 7–30 for a description of these rations and their uses.

(3) Troops should receive three meals daily. At least two of these meals should be hot. Plans for rationing troops are based upon the tactical situation, availability of vehicles, road net, traffic conditions, terrain, and weather. Methods of preparation and distribution of rations are discussed in FM 7–30.

b. Attachments for rations.—Mess personnel at the kitchen location will be informed of any attachments for rations in time to insure the preparation of an adequate amount of food and will be given directions for the loading of kitchen vehicles to secure proper distribution. If mess personnel are at a company mess location, the information is furnished by the company commander; if at a battalion kitchen location, by the battalion supply officer; and if under regimental control in the train bivouac area, by the service company commander.

c. *Battalion release of kitchen and baggage vehicles; action by the company.*—(1) The kitchen and baggage train usually moves and bivouacs under regimental control. The battalion section of the train is released to battalion control when necessary.

(2) The battalion supply officer (S–4) formulates a plan for feeding the companies of the battalion. The plan includes the time and place of release of kitchen vehicles to companies and time and place they are to revert to battalion control. After approval of the plan by the battalion commander, the battalion supply officer advises each company commander of the plan and arranges for company guides.

(3) The company provides guides who meet the company kitchen vehicles at the battalion point of release and conduct them over the most suitable route to the company mess location. The company commander is responsible for returning these vehicles to battalion control at the prescribed point, on or before the hour specified in the battalion plan.

d. Company mess location; method of distributing rations and water to individuals.—(1) The company mess location should be as near the troops to be fed as tactical conditions

permit. The location should afford concealment from hostile observation and should provide defilade from hostile flat-trajectory fire. The company commander selects the company mess location and insures that the men of his company and those of any attached elements are fed. *The feeding of personnel at detached posts must not be overlooked.*

(2) After the kitchen vehicles arrive at the company mess location, feeding begins as soon as preparations are completed. If a majority of the men can be served at the mess location this is the most satisfactory method of feeding. Care must be taken to prevent congestion at the mess location. Dispersion may be obtained by serving the meal by squad and requiring that squads remain separated by safe distances while at or near the mess location. Food and water in containers may be carried forward by carrying parties to those men who cannot come to the mess location. Platoon leaders, after being informed of the time, place, and method to be used for the distribution of the meal, are responsible for having carrying parties present at the mess location when the kitchen vehicles arrive, and for having the carrying parties return the empty containers at the designated time.

(3) Filled water containers are sent forward with meals. Canteens are refilled at the company mess location. This is expedited by emptying water containers into water sterilizing bags having multiple outlets from which the canteens may be refilled. When men are unable to come to the mess location, their canteens may be brought to the mess location by others and refilled, or water may be carried to them in water containers by carrying parties. Water is replenished locally wherever practicable. Before use, however, this water must be tested and its use approved by appropriate medical personnel. For details of water purification, see FM 8–40.

■ 198. CLASS II SUPPLY.—*a. General.*—Class II supplies comprise articles for which allowances are established by Table of Basic Allowances. Type items are clothing, gas masks, arms, trucks, tools, and items of signal equipment.

b. Replacement.—(1) Clothing and individual equipment are ordinarily replaced during periods when the company is not engaged in combat.

(2) When weapons or prescribed items of individual or organizational equipment are required during combat to replace those which have been damaged, destroyed, or lost, the company sends its requests through command channels to regiment. Small amounts are usually involved and delivery is made through the same channels as for class I supplies.

(3) The company sends back damaged weapons and equipment to the train bivouac by a kitchen vehicle or other transport going to the rear. The armorer-artificer makes such repairs as he can. The supply sergeant, or the armorer-artificer, arranges with the supply officer group (S–4 section) of the service company to turn in and secure replacement for articles damaged beyond local repair.

■ 199. CLASS III SUPPLY.—*a. General.*—Class III supplies for the rifle company consist of gasoline, lubricating oil, and grease. The regiment carries a reserve of gasoline and oil in containers. A part of this reserve may be distributed to individual vehicles. These containers and the fuel tanks of vehicles are refilled at every opportunity.

b. Distribution.—(1) During movement or in combat, the regiment and higher headquarters will establish class III distributing points for the resupply of motor fuel. At such points resupply may be effected by exchanging empty for filled containers or by the direct filling of vehicle tanks from multiple-outlet trucks.

(2) Individual vehicles sent to rear area supply establishments are serviced with gasoline and oil at these points. Other vehicles are resupplied at or from the regimental gas and oil distributing point which is established in the regimental train bivouac or other suitable location. To facilitate supply, small stocks of class III supplies may be established at battalion ammunition distributing points or filled containers may be delivered with class I supplies to the company area.

■ 200. CLASS IV SUPPLY.—*a. General.*—Class IV supplies comprise articles which are not covered in Table of Basic Allowances and the demands for which are directly related to the operations contemplated or in progress, except articles

in class III and class V. Engineer field fortification materials are the principal class IV items of concern to the rifle company.

b. Engineer supply.—The company commander is informed by the battalion commander as to where and when engineer field fortification materials will be furnished. Likewise, when additional intrenching tools are to be furnished by the battalion, he is informed of the details of distribution.

c. Medical supply.—During combat, emergency requirements are obtained by informal request to the nearest medical unit.

d. Other supplies.—Other items of class IV supply are obtained by requisition.

■ 201. CLASS V SUPPLY.—*a. General.*—Class V supplies include all classes of ammunition. Ammunition for the rifle company is carried as follows:

Type	Carried on—
Ammunition for light machine guns and 60-mm mortars.	Weapon carriers, battalion ammunition train, and division train.
Ammunition for all other weapons..	Individual soldier, battalion ammunition train, and division train.

The Table of Basic Allowances prescribes the amounts of ammunition carried in each place.

b. Battalion ammunition distributing point.—The battalion ammunition distributing point is located in the most advanced area that is practicable according to the situation. It is operated under the supervision of the battalion supply officer by personnel of the battalion ammunition and pioneer platoon. In attack, it is advanced by bounds along a route of ammunition advance prescribed by the battalion commander.

c. Offensive combat.—(1) *Initial supply.*—(*a*) *All weapons except light machine guns and 60-mm mortars.*—Prior to entry into combat and usually in the battalion assembly area, the vehicles of the battalion ammunition train allotted to the company are temporarily released to the company for the issue of extra ammunition. "Extra ammunition" is that ad-

ditional quantity of small-arms ammunition and grenades issued to the riflemen, automatic riflemen, and rifle grenadiers to augment that which they normally carry on the person. This amount should enable them to initiate and sustain combat until replenishment can be effected. The amounts of extra ammunition ordinarily issued are prescribed in the Table of Basic Allowances. The battalion commander may direct that greater or lesser amounts be issued. *After extra ammunition has been issued the ammunition train vehicles are returned immediately to the battalion ammunition distributing point for refill.*

(b) *Light machine guns and 60-mm mortars.*—During route marches, the company weapon carriers usually move by bounds in rear of the foot elements of the battalion or regiment. Prior to entry into combat the weapon carriers are released to the company and join the weapons platoon. As the platoon moves forward to its attack positions, the weapon carriers are conducted to off-carrier positions as near to the initial firing positions of the weapons as conditions permit. There the weapons and an initial supply of ammunition are unloaded. The remaining ammunition is consolidated on the minimum number of weapon carriers under the direction of the platoon transport corporal, who sends emptied weapon carriers to the battalion ammunition distributing point for refill.

(2) *Replenishment.*—(a) *Responsibility.*—See figure 29.

1. The battalion commander is responsible for the delivery of ammunition to one or more points, selected by the company commander, from which the latter can effect distribution to his platoons with the means at his disposal. Movement of weapon carriers in rear of the company area is supervised, coordinated, and expedited by the battalion commander.
2. The company commander is responsible for making an adequate supply of ammunition available to his platoons. Platoon commanders will usually send carrying parties back to the point where ammunition is available. If combat conditions prevent this, or if the distance is prohibitive,

the company commander may move the ammunition forward to the platoon by weapon carrier, by attached personnel from the battalion ammunition and pioneer section, if avail-

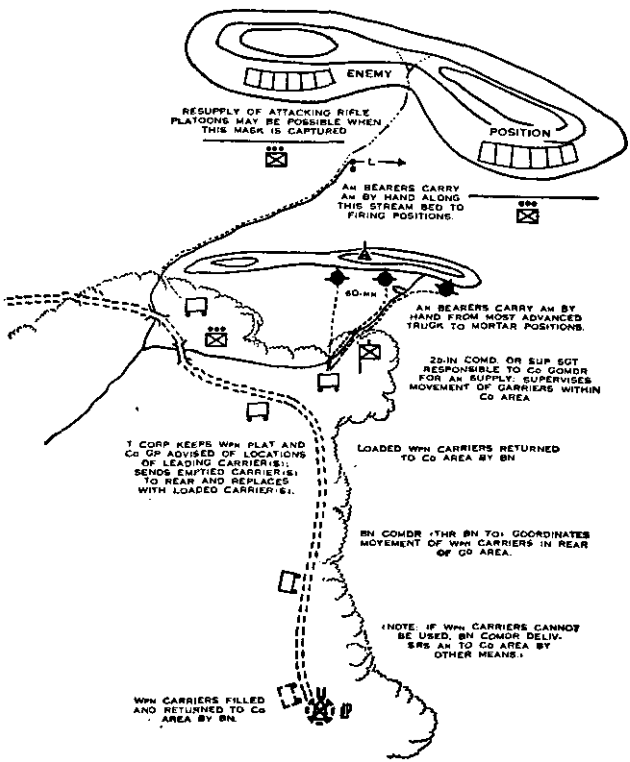


FIGURE 29.—System of ammunition replenishment.

able, or by carrying parties from the support platoon. The company commander usually assigns the second-in-command, or supply sergeant (operating from the company command post) to supervise the supply of ammunition

and the routine operation of weapon carriers in the company area.

3. The platoon leader (or leader of a weapon section detached from platoon control) is responsible for delivery of ammunition to the weapons and individuals. If his available personnel is insufficient, he requests assistance from the company commander.
4. Platoon and subordinate leaders are responsible for keeping their next superior (or the commander of the unit to which attached) informed of the amount of ammunition on hand.
5. All leaders will exercise strict supervision over the expenditure of ammunition.

(b) *Replenishment by weapon carriers.*

1. *General.*—When conditions permit the retention of weapon carriers in the company area, the weapons platoon retains one loaded vehicle as near the firing positions of the weapons as practicable; if sections are widely separated, a loaded vehicle may be retained near each section. The initial locations of these vehicles may be forward of the off-carrier position, the vehicles being moved to them by covered routes. These locations should provide deflade from hostile flat-trajectory fire and, if possible, concealment from aerial observation. Other loaded weapon carriers, as they arrive in the company area, are echeloned to the rear under company control in locations providing cover and concealment. The transport corporal maintains contact between these vehicles, the weapons platoon, and the company command post.
2. *Rifle platoons.*—Weapon carriers are normally used to replenish ammunition for the weapons platoon but may be used to bring forward ammunition for the rifle platoons. Rifle platoon leaders keep the company commander informed of the state of ammunition supply in their platoons and notify him when they are confronted with

an emergency ammunition requirement. *Ordinarily replenishment of ammunition for rifle platoons in the attacking echelon can be effected only after the capture of a terrain mask or after nightfall.*

3. *Weapons platoon.*—As soon as a truck under weapons platoon control is emptied, the transport corporal replaces it with a loaded vehicle and dispatches the emptied vehicle to the battalion ammunition distributing point for refill. The transport corporal ascertains from the platoon (or detached section) leader the type of ammunition desired and gives the chauffeur a note to that effect. On arrival at the battalion ammunition distributing point, the chauffeur gives the note to the battalion S–4, or his representative, who has the truck refilled and returned to the company area. Ammunition is carried from the nearest weapon carrier to the weapon by the squad ammunition bearers. The bearers of the platoon or of each section may be combined to facilitate supply.

(c) *Replenishment by hand carry.*—In general the battalion assumes control of company transport when enemy activity or lack of cover and concealment preclude its retention in the company area. The transport corporal remains with the transportation. When such conditions exist ammunition is supplied as described in (*b*) above, except that it is carried by hand.

(*d*) *Replenishment for attached units.*—The rifle company commander is responsible for the ammunition supply of attached units. The company commander may direct his representative at the command post to supervise the ammunition supply for the attached units, or he may authorize them to secure their ammunition directly from the battalion ammunition distributing point. In the latter case, he requires the leader of the attached unit to keep him informed of the state of his ammunition supply.

d. Defensive combat.—(1) *Initial supply.*—The battalion commander will prescribe the amount of ammunition to be

unloaded within the company defense area. The minimum amount so prescribed must be sufficient to obviate resupply before darkness. Primary, alternate, and supplementary positions are stocked. Weapon carriers, after stocking troop units, are refilled and assembled under regimental or battalion control in rear of the battle position.

(2) *Replenishment.*—(*a*) The responsibilities of the battalion, company, and platoon commanders for replenishment are the same as for offensive combat. After contact is made with the enemy, replenishment of ammunition within the company will usually be made under cover of darkness. Loaded weapon carriers are delivered by battalion to the company ammunition point. Loads are usually dumped at this point and the vehicles returned to the battalion ammunition distributing point. Any additional loads brought forward are likewise dumped at the company ammunition point. Distribution to platoons of ammunition dumped at the company ammunition point is effected by hand carry. If vehicles can move directly to the platoon defense areas, the company ammunition point is merely a control station. Ordinarily, platoon leaders will be instructed to report, at or shortly before dark, the amounts of ammunition on hand. Based on these reports the company commander plans and effects distribution.

(*b*) The company ammunition point is selected by the company commander and operates under an individual selected by him. Desirable characteristics are:

1. Convenience to platoons.
2. Location at or in rear of the point where favorable routes diverge to platoons.
3. Concealment from air and ground observation.
4. Defilade from hostile flat-trajectory fire.
5. Ease of identification.
6. Facility of motor movement to the rear.

■ 202. INDIVIDUAL ROLLS.—On the march the individual rolls of members of the company may be transported in kitchen and baggage train vehicles when part of the organic loads have been dumped. Rolls are delivered to the company during long halts when the duration of the halt and weather conditions warrant. The battalion supply officer effects delivery of rolls to companies and recovers the rolls at the time prescribed by

the battalion commander. During offensive combat, rolls may be sent forward with supper and collected by the battalion supply officer after the serving of breakfast. In defensive situations, the members of the company often may keep individual rolls with them.

■ 203. ORDERS.—*a.* Administrative matters in the company order may include such of the following items as are applicable:

(1) Location of company and battalion ammunition distributing points.

(2) Route of advance of ammunition (in attack).

(3) Amount of ammunition to be placed on position (in defense).

(4) Disposition of company vehicles.

(5) Location of battalion aid station.

b. Additional directions of an administrative nature may be included in the order, or issued later in fragmentary form to those concerned. These directions may include the plan for feeding, the detailing of guides, carrying parties, or other such matters.

SECTION II

MEDICAL SERVICE AND EVACUATION

■ 204. REFERENCES.—For details of the composition and equipment of the medical detachment of the infantry regiment, see Tables of Organization and Table of Basic Allowances. For general mission, organization, and functions of the headquarters and battalion sections of the medical detachment, see FM 7–30.

■ 205. PERSONNEL AND DUTIES.—The two medical department enlisted men serving with the rifle company are known as company aid men. They are attached to the company when it is on the march, in bivouac, or in combat. Each of these men carries two pouches containing first aid equipment, such as bandages, dressings, and tourniquets. Their duties are:

a. To maintain contact with the rifle company.

b. To administer first aid where needed.

c. To instruct walking sick and wounded as to the exact location of the battalion aid station and the route to be used in proceeding thereto.

d. To send information to their battalion surgeon by litter bearers and walking wounded. Their messages give the location of the company and the approximate number and location of casualties in the company area.

e. In combat, to place all seriously wounded in defiladed locations along the route of advance, thus facilitating the work of litter bearers.

■ 206. RELATION TO BATTALION MEDICAL SERVICE.—The company aid men are a part of the company aid squad of the battalion medical section. In combat, their work is closely related to that of the other squads of the medical section. Litter bearers follow behind the company aid men and remove the seriously wounded to the battalion aid station which is established and operated by the aid station squad.

■ 207. ORDERS.—The company order should always include information as to the location of the battalion aid station. This information should be made known to all the members of the company.

SECTION III

MOTOR MAINTENANCE

■ 208. RESPONSIBILITY.—*a.* The company commander is responsible for the operation and maintenance of his vehicles. He is assisted in the performance of these duties by the supply sergeant and transport corporal. Operating personnel are carefully selected. The most important link in the chain of vehicle operation is the driver. He is selected for his ability, judgment, and conscientious performance of duty. He is instructed in his duties, the inspections required of him, and the first echelon maintenance operations that he is required to perform. By personal observation, and by frequent inspections, the company commander insures that these operations are accomplished.

b. Vehicles requiring second, third, or fourth echelon maintenance are reported to the battalion commander. For echelons of maintenance, see FM 25–10.

CHAPTER 9

SIGNAL COMMUNICATION SYSTEM

■ 209. REFERENCES.—For methods of installing, operating, and maintaining the means of signal communication, see FM 24–5. For details of signal communication methods within the infantry regiment, see FM 7–25.

■ 210. PERSONNEL.—*a.* The first sergeant, communication sergeant, bugler, orderly, and messengers have duties pertaining to signal communication. For duties of personnel, see paragraph 8.

b. Messengers are assigned to company headquarters, the weapons platoon, and to each rifle platoon.

c. The bugler is included in communication personnel because of his employment in the air-antitank warning system.

■ 211. EQUIPMENT.—*a.* The following equipment is furnished for communication purposes:

(1) Wire—sets of reel equipment CE–11 (sound-powered telephone handset).

(2) Ground signal projectors and Very pistols.

(3) Flag sets. (Orange-colored flags mounted on staffs.)

(4) Flashlights.

(5) Marking panels, black and white.

(6) Whistles and bugles.

For allotments of these items, see current Table of Basic Allowances and Tables of Organization.

b. One set of reel equipment CE–11 consists of one sound-powered telephone handset and one breast reel containing ¼ mile of light wire. In order to establish communication between two points it is necessary to use two sets of reel equipment CE–11. As much wire as is needed, using either or both reels, is installed between the two points and a telephone handset is clipped on each end of the line. Thus, two sets are required to provide one channel of communication over a maximum distance of ½ mile. A set of tool equipment TE–33 is a companion set for use with reel equipment C–11 and is obtained by requisition.

■ 212. EMPLOYMENT OF MEANS OF SIGNAL COMMUNICATION.—*a.* Two sound-powered telephone sets (one channel) may be employed to provide communication between—

(1) The company and battalion command posts, when directed by the battalion commander.

(2) The company command and observation posts.

(3) The company commander and—

(*a*) A platoon leader.

(*b*) The light machine-gun section.

(*c*) The mortar section.

(*d*) A close-in reconnaissance or security detachment.

(*e*) The company transport.

(4) Any two elements of the company.

b. Messengers are used for communication within the company and with the headquarters of battalion and other units when a more rapid means is not available. One messenger is sent to the battalion command post by the company, and one messenger is sent by each platoon to the company command post when the company takes up a deployed formation. These messengers should be relieved frequently by others in order that the messenger on duty may be familiar with the location of his unit. Messengers should be trained to take brief notes when receiving oral messages and to deliver them promptly and correctly. Ordinarily only one simple oral message should be given to a messenger at one time.

c. (1) The principal means of visual signaling in the rifle company are arm-and-hand signals. These are employed as described in FM 22–5.

(2) Flashlights, flags, and pyrotechnics are used to send only the simplest kinds of prearranged messages. Pyrotechnics, fired by ground signal projectors and Very pistols, are used in accordance with the instructions of the battalion commander which in turn are based on signal operation instructions of higher headquarters. The principal use of pyrotechnic signals by front-line units (platoons or companies) is to call for prearranged supporting fires, to signal for these fires to cease or shift, or to signal arrival at a certain point. They are also valuable to give warning of enemy approach.

(3) Marking panels, issued to rifle squads are displayed by front-line units on signal from the infantry liaison airplane in order that the progress and location of leading infantry units may be reported to higher headquarters. Marking panels are most readily visible to aircraft when moved or waved during display. The white panels are normally used; the black panels are used when snow is on the ground.

d. Sound signals are employed primarily to give warning of hostile air or mechanized attack. (See par. 9.) They are also employed to give gas alarms. (See FM 21–40.) The whistle is used by leaders to fix the attention of their units preparatory to giving commands or signals.

■ 213. ORDERS RELATIVE TO SIGNAL COMMUNICATION.—Each field order issued by the company commander contains instructions for signal communication. Frequently such instructions consist only of the location of the commander or his command post. Other instructions relative to signal communication may be issued in fragmentary form and may include the use of pyrotechnic signals (in conformity with instructions of higher headquarters) or the allotment or use of any of the signal communication means available to the company.

■ 214. RELATION OF BATTALION COMMUNICATION SYSTEM.—*a.* In attack, communication between the battalion command post and the rifle companies is by messenger. When sufficient means are available, the battalion commander may allot sound-powered telephone equipment or portable radiotelephones to front-line companies for communication with the battalion command post.

b. In the defense whenever practicable telephone communication is established between the battalion command post and rifle companies.

c. When the rifle company or elements thereof are employed on distant security or reconnaissance missions (e. g., patrols, outposts, and flank detachments) light, portable radiotelephones are employed, when practicable, for communication between such detachment and the commander who sends it out. Radio equipment for units on these missions is provided by the battalion communication section.

APPENDIX I

INDIVIDUAL PROTECTION

■ 1. GENERAL.—Individual protection will be sought and improved, or excavated whenever troops are halted in a combat zone.

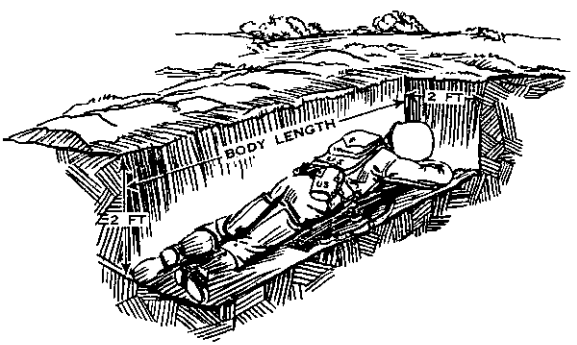
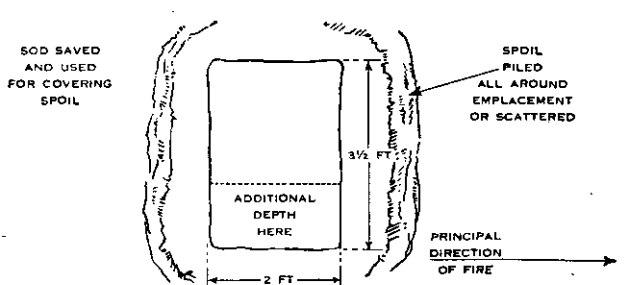


FIGURE 30.—Individual prone shelter or slit trench, oblique cross section.

■ 2. HALTS.—*a*. When the halt is expected to be brief, troops will take advantage of such natural protection as is afforded by the terrain (for example, ditches or holes in the ground).

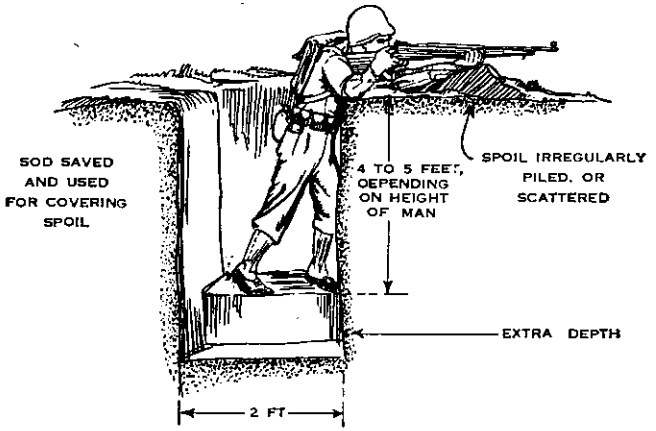


① Top view.

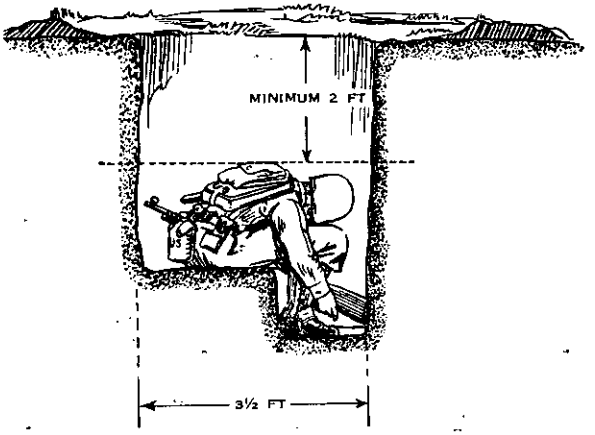
FIGURE 31.—Standing type one-man foxhole.

b. When the halt is to be for a longer period but less than 6 hours (for example, a halt in an assembly area), individual prone shelters will be constructed. (See fig. 30.) Full ad-

vantage will be taken of natural cover and concealment in the construction of these shelters. This type of shelter does not provide as effective protection as the standing type one-man foxhole (see fig. 31 ①, ②, and ③), but it permits the



② Side view.



③ Rear view—Minimum 2-foot clearance required to protect against tank tracks.

FIGURE 31.—Standing type one-man foxhole—Continued.

man to receive rest and protection simultaneously and can be quickly dug. It furnishes protection from bomb and artillery fragments and small-arms fire but does not furnish full protection against the crushing action of tanks.

c. When the duration of the halt may be more than 6 hours, standing type foxholes will be dug. Men occupy these foxholes only when an attack is in progress or imminent.

■ 3. DURING COMBAT.—Under conditions which make it probable that firing from shelters will be required, and when time

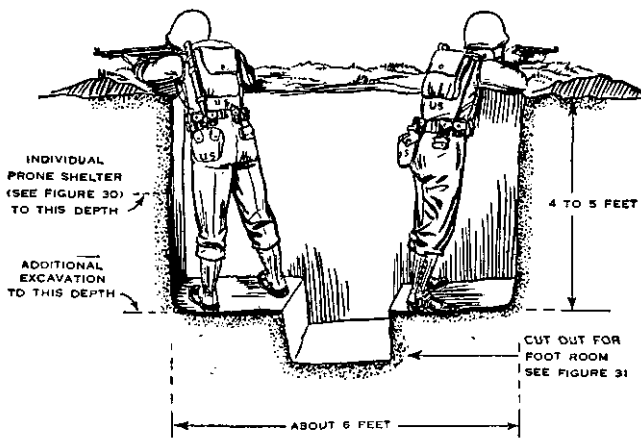


FIGURE 32.—Standing type double foxhole or slit trench. (See fig. 37 for adaptation as an observation post.)

NOTE.—The individual prone shelter or slit trench for one man shown in figure 30 when deepened to 4 or 5 feet is large enough for two men and can be used as a standing fire trench. No slit trench should be used to protect more than two individuals.

permits, protection for personnel and weapons will be provided. Suitable types of such protection are indicated below:

a. For individuals.—(1) Standing type one-man foxholes as shown in figure 31 ①, ②, and ③.

(2) Standing type double foxholes or slit trenches as shown in figure 32. This type affords slightly less protection than the one-man foxhole against bomb or shell fragments, but is equally effective against small-arms fire. It furnishes

much less protection against the crushing action of tanks. It is more conspicuous to air observers than the one-man type. It tends to increase the combat effect of the troops by providing fighting comradeship. This type is particularly suit-

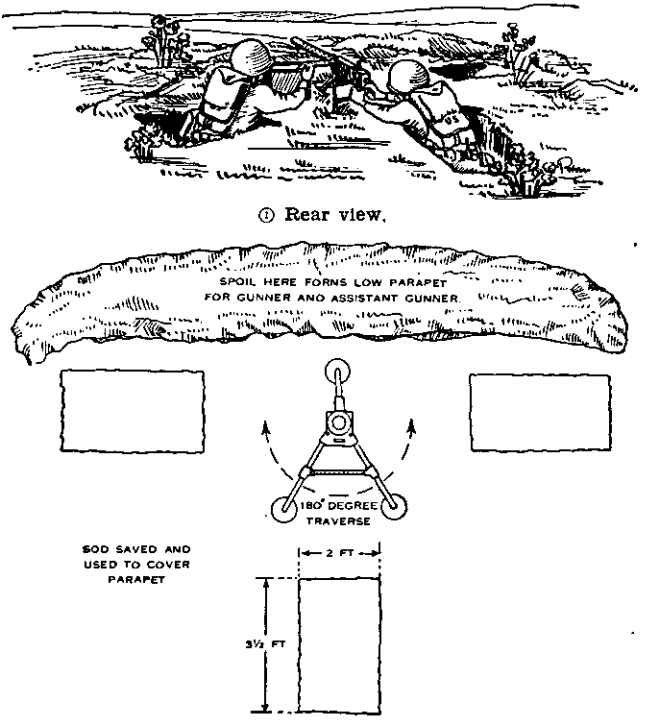


FIGURE 33.—Light machine-gun emplacement with three standing type one-man foxholes. (Spoil thrown up in front of the emplacement provides some protection to the crew from small-arms fire.)

able for occupancy by an automatic rifleman and his assistant or for other missions requiring men to act in pairs.

b. For light machine guns.—(1) Three standing type one-man foxholes for members of the crew, arranged generally as indicated in figure 33 ① and ②. This type permits opera-

FIGURE 34.—Light machine-gun emplacement. (The gun platform is approximately 6 inches below ground level. Spoil is used to form a low parapet around the emplacement, or it is scattered; sod is used on top of the parapet.)

tion of the weapon and affords the protection of the one-man type foxhole.

(2) An open standing emplacement, constructed approximately as indicated in figure 34. This type furnishes protection against small-arms fire and bomb and shell fragments, but affords less protection against the crushing action of tanks, which may destroy the gun platform. If this type is

FIGURE 35.—Emplacement for 60-mm mortar with standing type one-man foxholes. (Standing type one-man foxhole for observer is also prepared. His location is within voice range of the mortar emplacement.)

used, crew members should construct one-man type standing foxholes nearby.

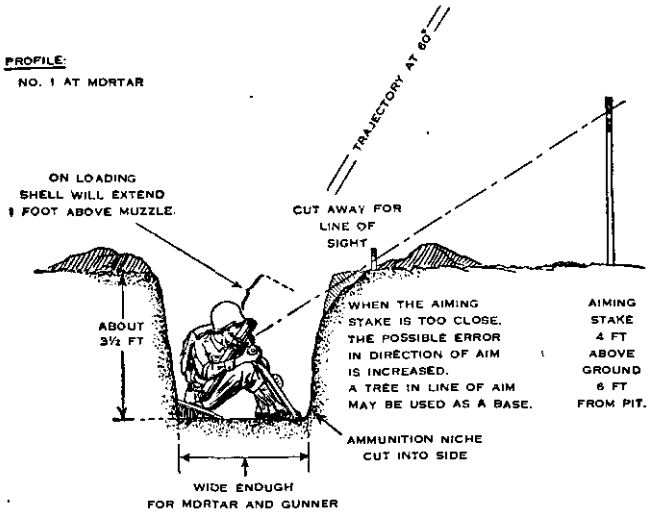
c. *For 60-mm mortar.*—(1) Standing type one-man foxhole for each member of the crew, arranged approximately as shown in figure 35.

(2) A single emplacement for mortar and crew as shown in figure 36 ① and ②. It is used to protect against bomb or shell (mortar and artillery) fragments as well as small-arms fire. However, it should be supplemented by nearby standing type foxholes for use of the crew in case of a tank attack. The observer's position should be close enough to the mortar to permit him to communicate with the crew by voice. The emplacement is a pit approximately 4 feet wide at ground level, 5 feet long, and 3½ feet deep. The emplacement must be large enough to receive the mortar, the gunner, and his assistant. Also, it must allow room for manipulation of the mortar, provide space for ammunition, and be sufficiently sloped on the forward edge to avoid interference with sighting and firing. Under favorable conditions, one man using engineer tools can dig this emplacement in medium soil in 4 hours.

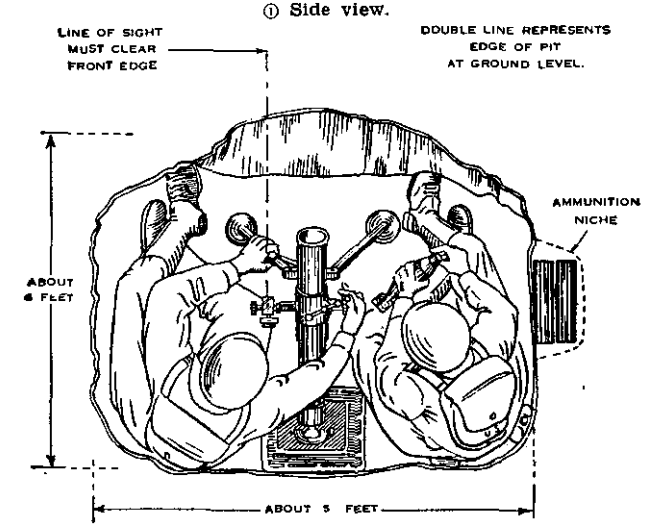
■ 4. OBSERVATION POSTS.—When a defensive position is to be occupied for some time, observation posts, listening posts, or snipers' nests may be developed from foxholes which are widened, deepened, reinforced, and covered with a removable camouflaged top. (See figs. 37 and 38.) Other types utilizing a tree, a log and camouflaged clothing, and a hedge are shown respectively in figures 39, 40, and 41.

■ 5. CAMOUFLAGE.—Good camouflage matches the surrounding area. Too elaborate camouflage or poor camouflage only serves to attract attention to the fortified area. (See figs. 42, 43, and 44.)

■ 6. CONSTRUCTION REQUIRED IN ORGANIZING A RIFLE SQUAD DEFENSE AREA.—Figure 45 shows a bird's-eye view of the disposition of an interior squad in foxholes covering the squad sector between lines 14 and 14*a*. Foxholes in the rear portion of the squad area are dug to provide all-around defense; they may be either the standing one-man or double type. (See



① Side view.



② Top view.

FIGURE 36.—Emplacement for 60-mm mortar.

NOTE.—Pit must be long enough to give room for gunner, mortar, and assistant gunner. It must be deep enough to give cover to all three below ground level.

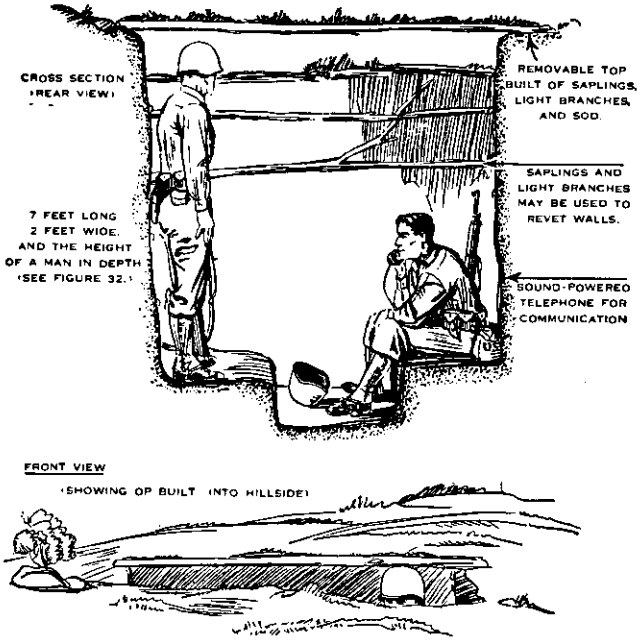


FIGURE 37.—Observation post in standing type double foxhole.

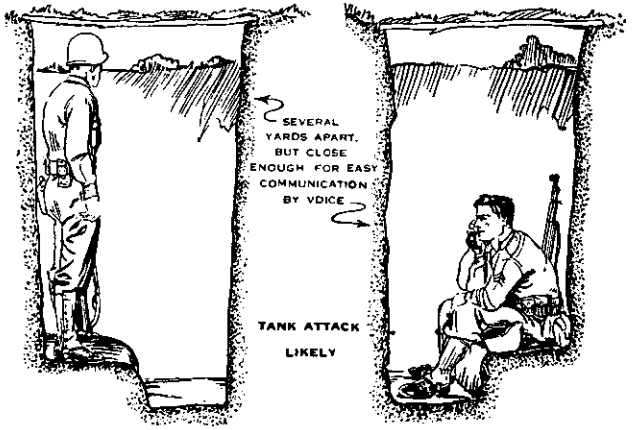


FIGURE 38.—Observation post utilizing two standing type one-man foxholes, each with camouflaged removable top.

FIGURE 39.—Observation post in tree.

NOTE.—Choose tree near edge of woods or in grove of trees so that surrounding foliage will form background for and screen observer.

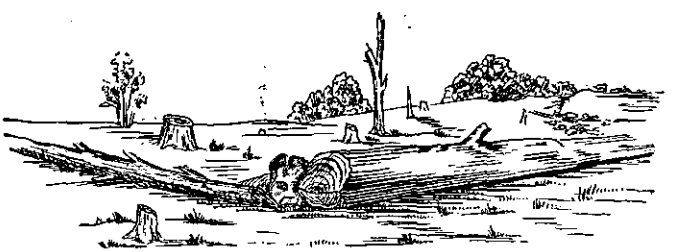


FIGURE 40.—Observation post behind log.

NOTE.—Observer's face should be smeared with mud or charcoal to prevent it from reflecting light. Camouflaged clothing or a covering of net or burlap will reduce possibility of observer being detected by enemy air or ground troops.

figs. 19, 31, and 32.) Letters enclosed in rectangles are abbreviations to indicate the members of the rifle squad:

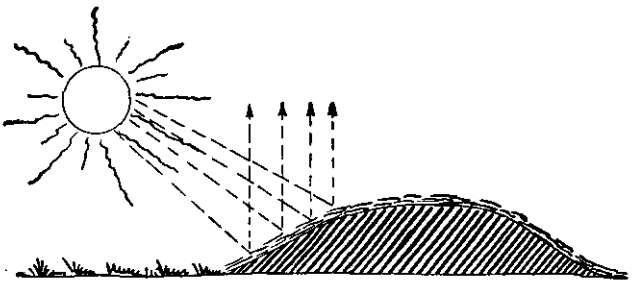
Letter	*Individual*	*Weapon*
S	Sergeant, squad leader	M1 rifle.
C	Corporal, assistant squad leader.	M1903 rifle for antitank rifle grenades.
AR	Automatic rifleman	Browning automatic rifle
AAR	Assistant automatic rifleman	Carbine
AB	Ammunition bearer	Carbine
R	Rifleman	M1 rifle

FIGURE 41.—Observation post in hedge.

① Wrong—To introduce unusual growth attracts attention.

② Right—On barren ground, leave position bare.

FIGURE 42.—Camouflage—unusual growth.



① Wrong—To strew spoil with grass lying flat is unnatural. Also, grass lying flat will reflect light and be easily picked up on aerial photographs.

② Right—Cover spoil with sod or grass growing naturally.

FIGURE 43.—Camouflage—grass.

① Wrong—Branches and brush piled horizontally are unnatural.

② Right—Branches and brushes should be placed in growing position.

FIGURE 44.—Camouflage—branches.

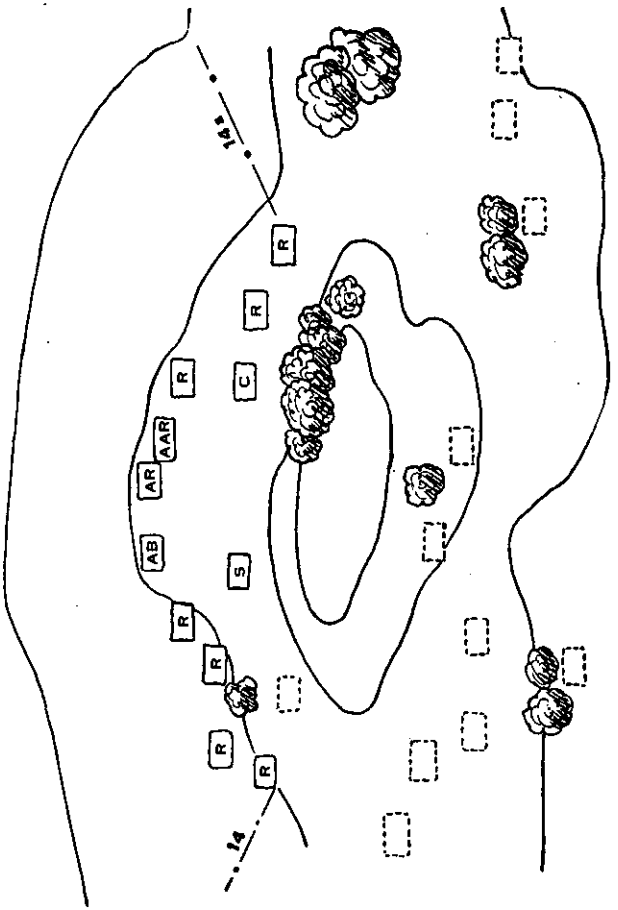


FIGURE 45.—Construction required in organizing rifle squad defense area.

APPENDIX II

DIRECTIVES FOR TACTICAL TRAINING OF RIFLE COMPANY

■ 1. GENERAL.—*a.* The directives which follow are designed to assist company officers and others in the preparation and conduct of tactical exercises and field maneuvers in which rifle companies will participate as a part of their field training. The directives cover most of the actions in which a rifle company will be involved during its approach to the battle field and during combat. They are to be considered as *guides* only and may be expanded or modified as local situations and the particular needs of individual units may warrant. A rifle company, however, will not be considered as being fully trained prior to its participation in exercises covering all phases of each type of operation outlined in the directives.

b. In addition to serving as guides for the tactical training of units, the directives cover essential points that should be covered by superior commanders in testing the tactical efficiency of rifle companies.

■ 2. PREPARATION.—For a general discussion of the preparation of field exercises and field maneuvers, see FM 21–5 and TF 7–295. The directives in this appendix show the definite phases of combat to be covered in each exercise.

■ 3. CONDUCT.—*a.* For the control and conduct of field exercises and maneuvers, see FM 21–5. The unit should be allowed to solve the problem as it sees fit. The officer conducting the exercises should have in mind solutions to the various situations that will confront the unit, but he does not force the unit or any parts of it to follow his preconceived notions as to what actions should be taken. Umpires may assess penalties or inject events which will serve to cause the units to act in a suitable manner should the need arise. These control measures, however, must be logical and appropriate.

b. For the responsibilities, duties, and conduct of umpires see FM 105–5.

c. Information transmitted by an umpire must ordinarily be so expressed as to give the commanders full liberty in determining their actions.

(1) The following are examples of correctly phrased information, applicable particularly to one-sided small unit exercises:

"For the last two minutes this unit has been subjected to heavy fire from a machine gun located on that hill (pointing)." (Designates several casualties and indicates the type of wounds.)

"Over there near the bridge—four shell impacts close together—four more shell impacts—another four."

"Artillery fire, apparently from the direction of that village, is falling in those woods" (points out the woods).

"A shell strikes 300 yards in front of you." Two minutes later: "Shell coming; impact 100 yards behind you."

As soon as the rifle platoon attacks: "Continuous machine-gun fire from direction of large house; fire from four guns striking all around us." As soon as platoon is under full cover: "Machine guns silent."

"Machine-gun fire sweeping directly over you." "Machine-gun fire striking right in front of you; No. 2 rifleman nicked in shoulder by ricochet; No. 1 rifleman shot in stomach."

"Enemy attack plane, flying low, approaching from right front, fires at column, and disappears to the rear."

"Airplane motor can be heard." "One airplane to the south. Too high to identify."

"You see drops of oily liquid on the grass."

"You notice an unfamiliar chemical odor."

"A shell fragment smashes the longitudinal spirit-level of your mortar."

"You have only 50 rounds left in your belt."

"Our own machine guns fire continuously over you to the left. These guns are apparently behind you."

(Aside to squad leader during hostile machine-gun fire.) "You have been hit—you are unconscious." (How does the squad react?)

"Our own artillery fire is now falling along the edges of the woods over there."

"Heavy machine-gun fire is heard on your right." "You see the impact throwing up dirt near the hostile machine-gun nests which have been holding up your advance."

(2) Examples of improperly phrased information are as follows:

"You are unable to advance any farther at this point."

"You must withdraw here."

Vague exclamation: "Shells are falling here," instead of information as to type of shells, area of impact, and duration of fire. Intensity, area, and time limits should be given.

Shouting: "Enemy withdrawing," instead of : "No. 1 rifleman, you see a hostile soldier running toward rear * * *, etc."

Shouting: "Gas," instead of: "You smell mustard."

Permitting troops to halt and remain inactive without giving them information.

(3) The information is properly given only when the umpire describes the *effect* of weapons or enemy maneuver and permits the leader concerned to make his own decision.

(4) Full use should be made of noncommissioned officers as umpires.

■ 4. CRITIQUE.—For a discussion of the critique which is always a part of each exercise see FM 21–5. Critiques may be held at any stage of an exercise. The chief umpire and his assistants should make notes for use at the critique held *on the ground* at the conclusion of the exercise.

■ 5. CONDITIONS.—Ample time will be given each unit to solve its problems logically. Reconnaissances must be made, subordinate leaders assembled when suitable, and orders issued. Full use must be made of such concealment and cover as the terrain provides. If troops are rushed through preparatory measures and move freely over terrain under hostile observation they will gain unnatural impressions that may later be disastrous.

■ 6. RIFLE COMPANY.

a. Security on the march (see FM 7–5, 7–10, 100–5).

Scope	*Execution*
An advance guard problem involving the use of a rifle	The plan of the company commander should be simple

Scope

company as the support of an advance guard.

Situations to be drawn so as to require—

(1) A series of decisions, plans, and orders by the company commander regarding—

(*a*) Initial dispositions and formations.

(*b*) Measures taken against attack of hostile aircraft or mechanized elements.

(*c*) The timely dispatch of necessary patrols.

(2) Action involving hostile patrols too strong for the advance party alone, and attacks by hostile planes and small hostile mechanized detachments.

Execution

and based on the orders of the advance guard commander, and a map study of data from reconnaissance elements; the company commander should render prompt decisions and issue clear and concise orders. Formation of company should be appropriate to the situation and mission, and suitable for the terrain.

Patrols should be given simple, definite orders and dispatched in time to permit them to accomplish assigned missions.

When the advance party is unable to drive off the enemy without delay, the support should be committed promptly and aggressiveiy without detailed reconnaissance; supporting weapons should be displaced forward early to support the attack. When the enemy is destroyed or driven off, the march should be resumed promptly in a suitable formation.

The company commander should keep the advance guard commander informed of the situation.

Air-antitank guards should be detailed to give timely information.

b. Approach march (see FM 7–5, 7–10, 100–5).

Scope

A problem involving a rifle company as the leading

Execution

Order should be clear, explicit, and as brief as is

Scope	*Execution*
echelon in an advance when hostile resistance is imminent. Situations to be drawn so as to require— (1) Issuance of company orders prescribing mission and formation for approach march across country. (2) Movement in an extended formation. (3) Continuous and thorough reconnaissance and security measures. (4) Appropriate changes in initial formation to meet changes in terrain and enemy activity. (5) Action against small hostile motorized patrols. (6) Movement into an assembly area for issuance of attack orders and extra ammunition.	consistent with clarity and issued from a vantage point of observation. The company should be able to move in an extended formation across country without loss of direction and control, and make maximum use of cover and concealment. The formation adopted should insure reconnaissance of the assigned area and protection of units in rear. Prompt issuance of orders to meet changing situations. Provisions made for flank security and liaison with adjacent units. Action against hostile patrols should be aggressive to drive out the enemy or to clarify the situation. Movement into the assembly area to be quiet and orderly, and to facilitate subsequent action. Provision should be made for antiaircraft and antimechanized defense.

c. *Security* (see FM 7–5, 7–10, 7–25, 7–30).

Scope	*Execution*
Outpost problem involving a rifle company as support of a bivouac outpost. A rifle company is designated as a support of a bivouac outpost protecting a resting command at night.	The company commander precedes his unit to its assigned area for a detail reconnaissance, directing the second-in-command to move the company to an area selected from a map study.

Scope

The outpost line of resistance, special reconaissance missions, and detached posts to be established are prescribed by the outpost (battalion) commander.

Situations to be drawn so as to require—

(1) Establishment of outguards and detached posts after reconnaissance and study of available maps.

(2) Organization of outpost line of resistance.

(3) Provisions for communication between the outpost commander, adjacent supports, and detached posts.

Execution

The support area is organized as for defense of a wide front with the support platoon mobile.

A line of outguards should be posted to cover all important approaches. Important road centers may require a rifle platoon with supporting weapons. Observers should be posted by the outguards to prevent surprise.

Unoccupied intervals are covered by fire.

Patrols from the support platoon should cover gaps between outguards and detached posts and maintain contact with adjacent units.

Upon establishment of the outpost the company commander submits a sketch to the outpost commander showing dispositions.

Establishment of necessary signal communication.

The company commander prescribes the location for his kitchen, provides a guide at the point of release, and details carrying parties for those who cannot be fed at the kitchen. Every man should get a hot meal and fresh water, and the kitchen should be returned to battalion control at a designated time. Foxholes or slit

Execution

trenches should be dug and camouflaged.

Provision should be made for antiaircraft and antimechanized defense.

d. Preparation for attack (see FM 7–5, 7–10, 7–40, 100–5).

Scope

A problem involving a rifle company in the occupation of a final assembly position by night and an advance to the line of departure, preparatory to a daylight attack.

Situations to be drawn so as to require—

(1) Personal reconnaissance, selection, and marking by daylight the route to final assembly position, and the subdivision of the assembly area to company headquarters and platoons.

(2) Enforcement of provisions for maintaining secrecy.

(3 Reconnaissance of locations on line of departure and of ground over which company attacks.

(4) Plan of action.

(5) Orders.

(6) Execution of movement to final assembly position and into platoon areas.

(7) Issue of extra ammunition.

(8) Movement to line of departure.

Execution

The company commander should plan his reconnaissance and issuance of orders so as to allow subordinates time for a daylight reconnaissance. After thorough reconnaissance the company commander should develop a simple plan and issue orders from points where some or all of the ground over which the company is to operate can be pointed out.

Route selected should be easy to follow at night, positively marked, and compass bearings and distances noted. Reconnaissance should not disclose projected operation. The march should be accomplished quietly, expeditiously, in secrecy, and without loss of direction.

Platoon areas in the final assembly position should facilitate transition to the attack. The company should complete preparations for attack in the final assembly position, including the issue of extra ammunition.

Execution

Movement should be initiated so as to permit leading elements to cross the line of departure at a prescribed hour without halting.

e. Attack during daylight (see FM 7–5, 7–10, 7–25).

Scope

A problem involving a rifle company as an interior element of the attacking echelon in a daylight attack.

Situations to be drawn so as to require—

(1) Action during attack requiring decisions and orders of company commander relating to the use of elements of the weapons platoon and support rifle platoon to assist the attack of the leading platoons in gaining the assigned company objective.

(2) Call on higher headquarters for supporting fires to assist in the capture of the company objective.

(3) Movement of the company command post and observation post.

Execution

Company commander should keep the company observation post well forward and spend considerable time there observing and directing the action; he should direct the movement of the company command post as suitable forward positions become available.

He should promptly employ his light machine guns to deliver flanking or oblique fire, and his 60-mm mortars on targets defiladed from effective fire of flat-trajectory weapons in support of the attacking echelon; he should keep the support ready to protect the company flanks against counterattack and to maneuver it against resistance holding up the assault echelon; he should anticipate the needs for supporting fire by the assault echelon and furnish it from his weapons platoon or request it from higher headquarters.

He should provide for mutual support within the at-

Execution

tack echelon and adjacent units. He should provide for security and the maintenance of contact. He should keep the battalion commander informed of his own and the enemy situation.

f. Continuation of attack (see FM 7–5, 7–10, 7–25, 7–30, 100–5).

Scope

A problem involving a rifle company as an interior element of an attacking echelon in continuation of the attack, to include the assault and reorganization.

Situations to be drawn so as to require—

(1) Continuation of attack from the company objective to the battalion objective.

(2) Call for supporting fires from higher headquarters.

(3) Assault and capture of enemy positions on battalion objective.

(4) Reorganization of company on battalion objective.

(5) Replacement of platoon leaders and key enlisted men.

(6) Resupply of ammunition.

(7) Disposition of prisoners of war, captured documents and matériel, and hostile identifications.

Execution

The company commander insures proper direction of the attack to the battalion objective.

He discovers where hostile resistance is weakening, and calls on higher headquarters for supporting fires to soften the enemy position for the assault. The attack echelon moves close to the hostile position under cover of these fires.

He arranges for the supporting fires to lift and continues the attack through the depth of the hostile resistance.

The company commander should actively supervise the reorganization of platoons, appointing leaders where necessary; he should reorganize his company headquarters. He should provide for the security of his company during the reorganization, including posting of air-antitank guards; he should

Execution

redistribute his forces in depth and in accordance with instructions prepare for further action.

He should determine the status of the ammunition supply, collecting it from the dead and disabled, and provide for a resupply of ammunition.

He should send prisoners of war, captured documents, and hostile identifications to battalion headquarters and keep that headquarters informed of the situation.

g. Defense during daylight (see FM 7–5, 7–10, 7–30, 7–40, 100–5).

Scope

A rifle company in the occupation and organization of a front-line company defense area during daylight.

Situation to be drawn so as to require—

(1) Movement of troops to the defense area during the reconnaissance of this area by the company commander and platoon leaders.

(2) Prompt formulation of ground organization and fire plans.

(3) Issuance of clear, brief, and adequate orders.

(4) Organization of the ground to be started with the minimum delay and conducted in the proper sequence.

Execution

Prior to departure on reconnaissance the company commander makes a tentative plan from a map study and initiates prompt movement of troops to the defense area. Company commander and platoon leaders precede troops and, so far as practicable, complete their reconnaissance and formulate plans prior to the arrival of the troops on the position.

Orders should be issued to enable work to start without unnecessary delay.

Subordinate units should be disposed to protect supporting weapons located in the area, to cover by fire approaches not adequately cov-

Scope	*Execution*
(5) Establishment of security measures against air and ground attack.	ered by the fire of supporting weapons; to provide for all-around defense; to facilitate mutual support between adjacent defense areas.
(6) Protection of supporting weapons.	The defenses at boundaries should be coordinated with adjacent units.
(7) Coordination with adjacent units regarding defenses at boundaries and limiting points.	Organization of the ground should proceed so that if interrupted by an enemy attack the work already performed will be most beneficial in defending the position.
(8) Arrangements for receipt and prompt distribution of entrenching tools, extra ammunition, antitank mines, and engineer materials.	Sufficient stocks of ammunition should be placed on the position to obviate resupply during daylight.
(9) Constant readiness to meet an attack.	Security measures should insure timely warning of an attack from the ground or the air and suitable action to meet such attacks, including the use of antitank mines in local defense.
(10) Constant supervision of work.	
(11) Establishment of observation and command posts.	

h. Defense at night (see FM 7–5, 7–10, 7–30, 7–40, 100–5).

Scope	*Execution*
A rifle company occupying and organizing a front-line defense area during darkness.	The order should be issued on the ground and in sufficient time to allow daylight reconnaissance by subordinate leaders and guides.
Extracts of the battalion defense order to be furnished the company commander.	The reconnaissance should be made by small, inconspicuous groups.
Situation to be drawn so as to require—	Routes and locations for all installations should be marked.
(1) A daylight reconnaissance by the company commander.	

Scope

(2) Marking of routes and locations for all installations for quick recognition at night.

(3) Movement to the defense area, establishment of local security, occupation of the position, and organization of the ground—all during darkness, lights prohibited.

(4) Defensive arrangements coordinated with supporting weapons located in the area and with adjacent units.

Execution

The company should move to the area shortly after dark and the organization of the ground should proceed quietly and without confusion. Entrenching tools and extra ammunition should be distributed in an orderly manner.

Foxholes or slit trenches should be dug for all personnel, emplacements prepared for crew-operated weapons, protective wire installed around platoon defense areas, and some clearing of fields of fire accomplished. Work completed depends on the visibility, time available, the character of the soil, and the density of vegetation.

Daylight should find ground organization proceeding, and with the defense coordinated with adjacent units and with supporting weapons located within the area.

Security measures should be established and maintained throughout the operation.

Supper and breakfast prepared and served in the field.

i. Conduct of defense (see FM 7–5, 7–10, 7–20).

Scope

A rifle company in the conduct of the defense of a front-line defense area against—

Execution

Local security groups fire on hostile patrols, keep their commander informed of enemy activity, and with-

Scope

Ground attack.

Air attack.

Tank attack.

Situations to be drawn so as to require—

(1) (*a*) Action of local security groups against hostile reconnaissance elements.

(*b*) Action during artillery bombardment.

(*c*) Action during enemy approach to: midrange—close range.

(*d*) Action against an attack from a flank.

(*e*) Action during assault of position by foot troops.

(*f*) Action against hostile elements which infiltrate into the position.

(*g*) Action on capture of a platoon defense area.

(2) Action against air attack when ground targets are threatening.

(3) Action during tank attack.

Execution

draw by previously selected routes.

Troops should take cover in slit trenches or foxholes during artillery and air bombardment. Maintenance of air-antitank observation.

Troops on the main line of resistance should remain concealed and withhold fire until targets appear within 500 yards. As enemy approaches within effective range troops engage remunerative targets.

A prearranged signal calls for final protective fires in a threatening area.

Flank attacks should be met by shifting troops to supplementary positions on the flanks of defense areas or by local counterattack.

Hostile elements which infiltrate into the company defense area should be engaged from flank and rear positions of forward platoon defense areas.

Ground targets receive priority over air targets; when not engaged with ground targets, all weapons suited for antiaircraft fire should engage low-flying planes attacking the position.

Battalion headquarters should be kept informed of changes in the situation.

Execution

Antitank grenadiers engage tanks during a tank attack; other troops take cover in their slit trenches. All troops should promptly resume firing positions and engage foot troops following tanks.

j. Night withdrawal (see FM 7–5, 7–10, 7–30, 100–5).

Scope

A night withdrawal from contact of an interior rifle company from a front-line company defense area.

Situations to be drawn so as to require—

Actions and orders of the company commander in execution of night withdrawal from a front-line defense area to include—

(1) Daylight reconnaissance of routes and assembly positions.

(2) Designation of company covering force, the commander, and the time he assumes command.

(3) Enforcement of secrecy measures.

(4) Withdrawal of company, less covering force.

(5) Withdrawal of covering force.

(6) Ammunition supply.

(7) Evacuation of wounded.

Execution

As soon as warned of the withdrawal the company commander should make his plan and notify company officers available. He should designate a covering force commander, preferably the second-in-command, and should designate the company covering force (approximately one squad per platoon). He should go to platoon leaders not immediately available, notify them of his plan, and direct them to send guides to the company command post. He should designate another officer, preferably the weapons platoon commander, to take guides on reconnaissance of assembly areas and routes thereto.

The company commander restricts daylight activity of forward elements that might indicate a rearward movement. Platoons assemble at the designated hour and

Execution

move to the company area; when assembled the company, less the covering force, moves to the battalion assembly area. The covering force should withdraw at a designated hour or on orders of the battalion covering force commander, and rejoin the company at the place designated by the company commander.

An adequate supply of ammunition should be left with the covering force. Surplus stocks should be carried out by hand. Resupply should be effected in a rear assembly area or on the new position. Improvised litters should be employed to evacuate wounded to the nearest available transportation. When this is impracticable, a company aid man should be left with them.

k. Daylight withdrawal (see FM 7–5, 7–10, 7–20, 100–5).

Scope

A problem involving a front-line rifle company in daylight withdrawal.

Company should be defending an organized position with its forward elements closely engaged with the enemy. Heavy machine-gun and antitank units located in the company defense area

Execution

The company commander should quickly develop his plan and promptly issue brief, fragmentary, oral orders to subordinate leaders, covering: time withdrawal will start; sequence in which units withdraw; routes of withdrawal; company assembly area; location of battalion as-

Scope

should be attached to the company for the withdrawal.

Situation to be drawn so as to require—

(1) The company to withdraw from action starting at a specified time in coordination with supporting fires.

(2) The company to withdraw so as to unmask the fire of the battalion covering force so far as practicable, and move along an assigned route to a designated assembly area.

(3) The use of company support elements as a local covering force for withdrawal of front-line platoons.

Execution

sembly area; and composition and location of company covering force.

Withdrawal should start at a specified time (without giving prior evidence of intention to withdraw to the enemy) beginning with element least heavily engaged and proceed as expeditiously as possible.

Company covering force should withdraw by covered routes after the remainder of the company has withdrawn beyond the next covering force in rear. This covering force may be provided by the battalion or by the company commander from rear elements of the company. The withdrawal of the bulk of the company must be protected at all times by suitable covering forces.

Measures should be taken to insure minimum loss of control and prompt reorganization en route to, or at, the assembly area.

Weapons and supplies should be evacuated or destroyed.

Wounded should be evacuated. When this is impracticable medical personnel and supplies should be left with them.

l. Delaying action following daylight withdrawal (see FM 7–5, 7–10, 7–20).

Scope

A problem involving a rifle company in delaying action following a daylight withdrawal.

The company with attached elements as the covering force of a battalion in a daylight withdrawal and disposed initially in a position prescribed by the battalion commander. Limited transportation facilities for use in ammunition supply and evacuation of wounded may be provided.

Situations to be drawn to require—

(1) The delivery of long-range fires against enemy elements.

(2) Establishment and protectibn of road blocks.

(3) The company to hold its initial and succeeding positions as long as practicable but to effect withdrawals before becoming closely engaged or outflanked.

(4) Evacuation of wounded.

Execution

Orders should be brief, issued in fragmentary form, and of the mission type.

Positions near crests should be occupied to facilitate withdrawals and obtain long-range fields of fire; short-range fires are secondary in importance. Rifle elements should be disposed to protect supporting weapons and flanks. Enemy should be engaged at maximum effective range of weapons with a heavy volume of fire.

Withdrawals to succeeding positions should be effected without becoming closely engaged with the enemy.

Maximum practicable delay should be effected by destruction of bridges and by road blocks.

Wounded should be evacuated using available transportation to a maximum.

m. Defense from attack (see FM 7–5, 7–10, 100–5).

Scope

A problem involving a rifle company in the assumption of the defense following an unsuccessful attack.

Situations to be drawn so as to require—

Execution

When the attack is halted, the company commander should notify the battalion commander and transmit orders to his platoons directing them to hold present posi-

Scope

(1) The company stopped on unfavorable terrain with all platoons in action following an unsuccessful attempt to capture an objective.

(2) Adjustments for hasty occupation of position during remaining hours of daylight.

(3) Organization of a position.

Execution

tions, make minor adjustments to take full advantage of terrain, and dig in. He should gradually thin out forward elements to provide depth in the defense and security to the flanks. Positions of company and supporting weapons should be modified to support the hasty defense to the best advantage. The company commander should take steps to establish contact and improve coordination with adjacent units.

n. Motorized detachment on combat mission (see FM 7–5, 7–10, 7–40).

Scope

A problem involving a motorized detachment, consisting of a rifle company with appropriate reinforcements, on a combat mission.

Units available to company commander for the motorized detachment should be prescribed in a directive from higher headquarters.

Situations to be drawn so as to require—

(1) Issuance of brief oral orders for assembling the detachment and moving out on the assigned mission.

(2) Adequate security measures against air and mechanized attacks.

Execution

Actions taken and orders issued by the company commander should result in the orderly assembly of the detachment with proper equipment for the assigned mission, and suitable means for rapid communication and control of the column during movement. The formation should provide adequate security against hostile air and ground forces.

There should be no hesitation in ordering nor confusion in executing a cross-country movement.

In the final phase, actions taken and orders issued

Scope	*Execution*
(3) A cross-country motor movement as a result of unexpected enemy action.	should provide for: selection of a suitable detrucking area; the guiding of trucks into the detrucking area and their proper dispersion and concealment therein; security for the detrucking area during and subsequent to detrucking.
(4) Execution of an attack, defense, or delaying action.	Personal reconnaissance by detachment commander; prompt issuance of brief oral orders for the effective employment of all elements of the detachment in a coordinated attack, in defense or in delaying action.

o. *Motorized advance guard in daylight movement* (see FM 7–5, 7–10, 7–20, 7–40).

Scope	*Execution*
A problem involving a rifle company with appropriate attachments as the advance guard of a motorized column making a daylight movement.	Brief warning orders followed by oral orders for the movement should result in the proper assembly, entruckment, and movement of the advance guard and patrols so as to clear the initial point at the prescribed time.
Situations to be drawn so as to require—	Automatic weapons should be mounted for antiaircraft fire, canvas truck covers removed to permit firing by riflemen and automatic riflemen, and the formation of the column such as to present a poor target to hostile air-
(1) The issuance of warning orders.	
(2) The correct estimation of time factors so as to permit the advance guard to precede the main body by the prescribed interval.	
(3) The proper employment of elements of the ad-	

vance guard to clear a road block.

(4) The employment of all elements of the advance guard to develop the situation when resistance is encountered.

craft. The point should consist of a small patrol with a get-away vehicle. Proper use should be made of radio for communication.

Prompt action when road block is encountered should include proper dispersion and concealment of vehicles and resumption of movement when block is cleared. *Elements in rear should not close up and halt on the road, but should seek concealment on each side of the road.*

When increased resistance is met, the support should move into the designated detrucking area, properly disperse, and take advantage of available concealment and cover. Orders for the employment of all elements of the advance squad should be timely, clear, and concise. Proper information should be sent to the commander of the main body.

p. Night attack (see FM 7–5, 7–10, 7–40, 100–5).

Scope

A problem involving a rifle company in a night attack.

Situations to be drawn so as to require—

(1) Reconnaissance of an unfamiliar area.

(2) Formulation of plan for attack and plans for de-

Execution

Prompt warning orders should initiate necessary administrative arrangements and provide for assembly of subordinates for orders. Reconnaissance by company commander should include route of advance to line of

Scope

fense of captured objective or continuation of attack at daybreak.

(3) Oral orders.

(4) Advance across country to final assembly area and thence to a line of departure.

(5) Execution of a night attack.

(6) Consolidation of position for defense prior to daylight.

Execution

departure and the hostile position.

The company commander should issue clear, concise orders for the attack and defense of the captured objective or continuation of the attack. These orders should be issued so as to permit detailed daylight reconnaissance by subordinates.

Provisions should be made for: insuring secrecy prior to actual assault; identifying members of the attacking company; flank security; prompt reports of progress; prohibition of loading of pieces; and the arrangement for supporting fires by heavy weapons and artillery in case of hostile counterattack.

Maintenance of direction should be insured by use of column formations and the employment of the compass, ground forms, and landmarks.

After capturing the objective, the company commander should provide for reorganization and assumption of suitable defensive positions. If the attack is to be continued suitable measures should be taken to assure its effective execution.

q. Attack in woods (see FM 7–5, 7–10, 7–40, 100–5).

Scope

A problem involving a rifle company as leading echelon in an attack through a large woods.

Situations to be drawn so as to require—

(1) The assumption of a proper formation in the edge of a large woods as the base company of an interior battalion preparatory to an attack through the woods.

(2) An advance through dense woods without hostile resistance, other than by snipers, for at least 1,000 yards.

(3) The reduction of isolated enemy combat posts in clearings or at trail intersections.

(4) Reorganization and preparations for debouchment from the woods.

Execution

The company should be halted near the edge of the woods with front and flanks covered by scouts. Intervals and distances should be reduced to limit of visibility; physical contact should be insured between units.

In dense woods, advances should be made in columns covered by scouts; in thin woods leading elements usually advance in skirmish line. Direction should be maintained by means of compass bearing.

Snipers should be promptly dislodged by sharpshooters or by bursts of automatic rifle or light machine-gun fire. Hostile resistance should be promptly enveloped by infiltration and attack from flanks and rear. Upon reaching far edge of woods advance should be stopped, units reorganized, prompt reconnaissance made, brief oral orders issued, supporting weapons emplaced, and attack resumed to seize next objective.

■ 7. RIFLE PLATOON.

a. Security on the march (see FM 7–5, 7–10).

Scope

An advance guard problem involving the use of the

Execution

Platoon leader must render prompt decisions; issue

Scope	*Execution*
rifle platoon as an advance party. Situations to be drawn so as to require— (1) A series of decisions, plans, and orders by the platoon leader. (2) Action involving the point, flank patrols, connecting files, and the advance party in carrying out the assigned mission.	clear and concise orders to carry out his plans; maintain contact with the point by connecting files; and keep the support commander informed of the situation. Patrols should be employed to reconnoiter dangerous terrain on the flanks up to approximately 200 yards. Platoon leader, through aggressive leadership, controls the action of his platoon in carrying out the assigned mission.

b. *Approach march* (see FM 7–5, 7–10).

Scope	*Execution*
A problem involving the rifle platoon, as part of a larger force, in the approach march. Situations to be drawn so as to require— (1) Use of scouts to cover the advance and patrols, as necessary or ordered, to protect flanks or maintain contact. (2) Changes in disposition of troops for purposes of control, to screen unit from hostile observation, and to minimize losses from artillery fires and air attack. (3) The movement into the assembly area, the issuance of extra ammunition, reconnaissance, orders, and	The platoon should be able to move in an extended formation across country without loss of direction or control. It should be able to take advantage of cover, concealment, and different types of terrain. Provision should be made for security to the front and liaison with adjacent units. Platoon leader should precede the platoon far enough to reconnoiter effectively the zone of action. Heavily shelled or gassed areas should be detoured. Movement into the assembly area should be quiet and orderly. Extra ammunition should be issued in such a

Scope	*Execution*
final preparations for the attack.	manner as to prevent bunching of men. Reconnaissance should be thorough. Orders for the attack should be thoroughly understood by each squad.

c. *Security during halts* (see FM 7–5, 7–10).

Scope	*Execution*
An outpost problem involving the use of a rifle platoon as the support. Situations to be drawn so as to require— (1) Establishment of the support in its sector. (2) Posting of outguards. (3) Use of patrols in advance of line of observation and to maintain contact with outguards and adjacent supports. (4) Organization of the support position. (5) A sketch showing disposition of the support and outguards. (6) Action of outguards and support proper in defending the outpost line of resistance during an attack.	After a short reconnaissance or map study the platoon leader must be able to establish the support proper, outguards, and patrols in a prompt and orderly manner. After an inspection of the various elements of the support he should be able to submit a sketch to the outpost commander showing the dispositions of the platoon. Air-antitank guards should be established and antitank rifle grenadiers should be posted to cover probable tank approaches. Foxholes or slit trenches should be dug and camouflaged for all personnel. The platoon leader should have a plan of defense in case of hostile attack, and through aggressive leadership control the action of his platoon during an attack of the outpost.

d. Motorized detachment (see FM 7–10, 7–40).

Scope

A problem involving the use of a rifle platoon as a motorized detachment.

Situations to be drawn so as to require—

(1) A series of decisions, plans, and orders by the platoon leader.

(2) Action involving the reduction of a road block.

(3) The passage and defense of a defile.

(4) Reconnaissance on an extended front by motor patrols.

Execution

The platoon leader must be able to organize the detachment to provide for control, flexibility, mobility, and security. His decisions must be prompt; his orders, clear and concise. His decisions, orders, and actions must be preceded by a thorough, yet speedy, reconnaissance.

His plan of control and signal communication must permit movement on an extended front if necessary.

He should control each situation through intelligent and aggressive leadership.

e. Tactical march (see FM 7–5, 7–10).

Scope

A problem involving the rifle platoon, as part of a larger force, on the march.

Situations to be drawn so as to require—

(1) Emphasis on march discipline.

(2) Disposition of sick or stragglers.

(3) Proper use of water.

(4) Conduct during halts—security measures.

(5) Action during an air or mechanized attack on the column.

(6) Use of guides at assembly areas.

Execution

Proper supervision and control by the platoon leader and his noncommissioned officers should enable the platoon to meet without difficulty all the problems confronting troops in a tactical march, such as disposition of sick or stragglers, use of water, conduct during halts, and air and mechanized attacks on the column.

Guides assist the movement into and occupation of an assembly area. The end of the march should find the troops in good physical con-

Scope	*Execution*
(7) Movement into an assembly area.	dition, ready to participate in an attack or any other action required.

f. Security in defense (see FM 7–5, 7–10).

Scope	*Execution*
A problem involving a rifle platoon as the combat outpost for an interior front-line battalion. Situation to be based on establishment of combat outpost in conformity with orders of the battalion commander and to be drawn so as to require— (1) Reconnaissance and selection of the outpost position by the platoon leader. (2) Establishment of the combat outpost by the platoon leader to furnish the required local security. (3) Actions of combat outpost.	In reconnaissance for a combat outpost position, the platoon leader seeks terrain that affords long-range observation. The combat outpost sends forward outguards to hold the foreground of the battalion defense area under observation. A small support may be held in a central location. Provisions are made for patrolling between outguards and for contact with adjacent units. The combat outpost gives warning of a hostile approach and repels hostile detachments that penetrate the general outpost. When required to withdraw, the withdrawal is made by previously selected routes which do not interfere with fire from the battle position.

g. Attack (see FM 7–5, 7–10).

Scope	*Execution*
A problem involving an interior rifle platoon, as part of a larger force, in the attacking echelon. Situations to be drawn so as to require—	The platoon leader with such assistants as he may select should make a thorough reconnaissance, prepare his plan of action, and issue his orders from a concealed point

Scope	*Execution*
(1) Reconnaissance and observation of the ground over which the platoon is to attack. (2) Plan of action. (3) Orders. (4) A series of decisions and orders by the platoon leader during the attack to cope with developments. (5) Assault of the enemy's position.	where, if possible, the ground over which the platoon is to attack may be pointed out. His decisions and orders during the attack must be prompt, clear, and concise. He must control his platoon during the attack and assault by aggressive leadership.

h. Attack as support (see FM 7–5, 7–10).

Scope	*Execution*
A problem involving a rifle platoon as a support platoon in a coordinated attack of a larger force. Situations to be drawn so as to require— (1) The support platoon to follow the attacking echelon by bounds. (2) Preparation of tentative plans for action. (3) Local security measures to protect the platoon and flanks of the company. (4) The use of the platoon to launch a flank attack against resistance holding up the leading echelon.	The platoon leader must constantly observe the action of the attacking echelon and the situation on the flanks of the company. He should displace his platoon forward by bounds from covered position to covered position. Proper control should prevent the merging of his platoon with the attacking echelon. Suitable dispositions are made to protect the flanks and rear of the platoon, and of the company, as ordered by the company commander. By suitable control and aggressive leadership he should be prepared to enter the action at any time. The employment of the platoon in the flank attack should be initiated by short, clear orders and executed with precision and decision.

i. Continuation of attack (see FM 7–5, 7–10).

Scope

A problem involving reorganization of the rifle platoon for continuation of the attack upon reaching the company objective.

Situations to be drawn so as to require—

(1) Use of automatic rifle teams and antitank rifle grenadiers to cover reorganization.

(2) Reorganization of the platoon.

(3) Replenishment of ammunition by collection from dead and wounded.

(4) Report to be made to the company commander on prisoners, identifications made, casualties, and status of ammunition supply.

Execution

Upon reaching the objective, the platoon leader employs automatic riflemen and antitank rifle grenadiers for security and, with the assistance of his noncommissioned officers, promptly reorganizes his platoon, replacing leaders and key men who have become casualties. Ammunition should be collected from the dead and wounded and redistributed to squads. The platoon leader reports to the company commander the number of prisoners captured, hostile identifications made, and the number of casualties and status of ammunition supply in his platoon. Reconnaissance is started and plans made to resume the attack.

j. Hasty occupation of defense position (see FM 5–15, 7–5, 7–10).

Scope

A problem involving an interior front-line rifle platoon, as part of a larger force, in the hasty occupation of a defense position.

Situations to be based on the threat of enemy fire on the position within a few hours and to be drawn so as to require—

Execution

After a hasty reconnaissance, the platoon leader should select positions for each rifle squad, automatic rifle team, and antitank rifle grenadier. Squads should mutually support each other and adjacent units.

Observation and local security should be assured first;

Scope

(1) Reconnaissance by platoon leader to locate positions of rifle squads, automatic rifle teams, and antitank rifle grenadiers.

(2) Security for, and coordination with, supporting weapons located in area.

(3) Decisions, actions, and orders of platoon leader for—

(*a*) Occupation and organization of position and fires.

(*b*) Priority of work.

(4) Actual work on position.

(5) Overlay or sketch to be prepared and submitted.

Execution

clearing of fields of fire, preparation of some foxholes or similar entrenchments and camouflage should be executed simultaneously; preparation of obstacles with full advantage taken of natural features should have an early priority. Works should be gradually developed to provide the greatest possible defensive strength in time available. An overlay or sketch of position should be prepared and sent to company commander.

k. Defense (see FM 5–15, 5–20, 7–5, 7–10, 100–5)

Scope

A problem involving a rifle platoon, as part of a larger force, in the organization, occupation, and defense of an interior front-line platoon defense area.

Situations to be drawn so as to require—

(1) Reconnaissance of the area.

(2) A plan for the organization of the ground.

(3) A plan of fires to include mutual flanking support.

(4) Priority of tasks.

(5) Posting of air-antitank guards.

Execution

Platoon leader should precede the unit, reconnoiter area to be occupied, determine exact location of his defense area, develop his plan of defense, and establish priority of tasks in order that his platoon may move into area without delay.

The defense area when organized should provide: fires to cover assigned front and provide mutual flanking support; close protection for supporting weapons located in area; fire cover and alternate positions for each squad; air-antitank guards; a com-

Scope	*Execution*
(6) Obstacles and camouflage. (7) Fire, cover, and alternate positions for the automatic rifles and the rifle squads. (8) Selection of the command post. (9) Conduct of the defense, to include— (*a*) Withholding of fire until enemy troops within effective range (500 yards). (*b*) Final protective fires. (*c*) Action against attacks by hostile foot troops and mechanized forces. (*d*) Measures to block or eject enemy penetration of platoon area and of adjacent area.	mand post which will afford effective observation over the platoon area, its sector of fire, and the areas of adjacent platoons; belt of obstacles (wire entanglement) entirely surrounding the area; camouflage of positions; communication within the area and with the company. During the attack of the position, fire should be held until the attacker comes within close range. Should enemy elements succeed in entering the position they are ejected by fire or counterattack.

l. Defense as support (see FM 5–15, 5–20, 7–5, 7–10).

Scope	*Execution*
A problem involving a support platoon, as part of a larger force, in the organization, occupation, and defense of a support defense area. Situations to be drawn so as to require— (1) A reconnaissance of the area. (2) A plan for and the organization of the ground. (3) A plan of fire. (4) Obstacles and camouflage. (5) Antiaircraft fire by automatic rifles.	Before starting on reconnaissance, the platoon leader arranges for movement forward of the platoon; while on reconnaissance he formulates plan and prepares notes from which to issue his defense order upon his return; he should establish priority of tasks. Organization should provide fire to the flanks of the forward defense areas, in the gaps between them, and within the forward areas should they be overrun; pro-

Scope	*Execution*
(6) Antimechanized fire by antitank rifle grenadiers. (7) Alternate squad positions. (8) Selection of command post. (9) Communication. (10) Conduct of the defense.	tection for the flanks and rear of the company area is provided.

m. Relief of front-line platoon (see FM 7–5, 7–10).

Scope	*Execution*
A problem involving a rifle platoon, part of a larger force, in night relief of a front-line platoon. Situations to be drawn so as to require— (1) Prior planning by platoon leader to include— (*a*) Inspection of individual equipment, arms, ammunition, and reserve rations. (*b*) Reconnaissance of position and inspection accompanied by the platoon leader to be relieved. (*c*) Plan of defense. (*d*) Arrangement for guides and point where they will meet relieving unit. (2) The execution of the relief, under cover of darkness, as planned by the platoon leader.	Incoming platoon leader, assisted by his noncommissioned officers, makes a detailed inspection to assure himself that his platoon has the prescribed equipment, ammunition, and reserve rations. Both platoon leaders make a thorough reconnnaissance and inspection of the position and arrange transfer of authorized supplies and equipment. The incoming platoon leader should orient himself on his mission, the plan of defense, supply and evacuation arrangements, and all available information of local hostile and friendly dispositions, habits, obstacles, and fires. He orients his platoon on all these points and designates positions for squads in the defense area. He arranges for guides to lead his platoon forward during darkness and where guides will meet the platoon.

Execution

He reconnoiters routes forward. The relief should be made quietly and without lights. After the relief is completed the platoon leader makes an inspection of his area and reports to the company commander.

n. Daylight withdrawal (see FM 7–5, 7–10).

Scope

A problem involving a rifle platoon, as part of a larger force, in a daylight withdrawal from contact.

Situations to be drawn so as to require—

(1) Orders of the platoon leader.

(2) Withdrawal of platoon elements by small groups.

(3) Use of noncommissioned officers for control.

(4) Designation of elements to cover the withdrawal.

(5) Defense against air and tank attack during the withdrawal.

Execution

The platoon leader's orders should be clear and brief, cover the plan and control of the withdrawal, and be specific as to the route to the rear position. Reconnaissance will usually be coincident with the withdrawal. Withdrawal of squads must be coordinated, employing automatic riflemen to maintain a volume of fire while gradually thinning out the line. Individuals move straight to the rear, reporting to noncommissioned officers at designated points in rear of the support platoon area, where they are assembled and moved to the company assembly area.

Air-antitank guards are designated. In case of air attack against them after they break contact, troops open fire on attacking planes. Antitank rifle grenadiers fire on mechanized vehicles within effective range. The pla-

Execution

toon leader should control his platoon by intelligent, aggressive leadership.

o. Night withdrawal.

Scope

A problem involving the night withdrawal of a front-line rifle platoon, as part of a larger force.

Situations to be drawn so as to require—

(1) Reconnaissance of the platoon and company assembly areas and routes of withdrawal.

(2) Issuance of order.

(3) Designation and employment of the covering force.

(4) Control measures for the movement of the platoon to the company assembly area.

(5) Sequence of withdrawal of personnel.

(6) Measures to preserve secrecy.

(7) Ammunition supply.

Execution

Routes of withdrawal and assembly areas must be reconnoitered and marked during daylight by men selected by the platoon leader. Reconnoitering groups must be small to preserve secrecy. Routes chosen should be easily identified after dark.

The platoon leader should go personally to his subordinates and issue the withdrawal order.

When practicable, integrity of squads should be maintained in designating the platoon covering force.

Rearward movement should begin after dark in accord with orders of higher authority. Individuals move to squad assembly area, where squad leaders regain control and move squads to the platoon assembly area. Small column formations should be adopted. Movement should be accomplished quietly, without confusion, and in secrecy. The covering force should simulate normal activity. Sufficient ammunition should be left with the covering force. Any

Execution

surplus ammunition should be carried to the rear or rendered useless.

p. Night attack (see FM 7–5, 7–10, 7–40, 100–5).

Scope

A problem involving the employment of a rifle platoon, as part of a larger force, in a night attack.

Situations to be based on an attack shortly before daylight to seize a limited objective to facilitate continuation of attack after daylight and to be drawn so as to require—

(1) Daylight reconnaissance of routes, line of departure, and observation of the ground over which attack will be made.

(2) Formulation of plan and order by the platoon leader.

(3) Formation, used in forward movement, to be one that provides ease of control and maintenance of direction by leaders.

(4) Assault of position.

(5) Actions of leaders upon completion of successful attack.

Execution

Night attack should be preceded by a detailed daylight reconnaissance of terrain over which the approach and attack are to be made.

Leader's plan must be simple and orders should cover every eventuality that reasonably can be foreseen. Secrecy is indispensable for success of a night attack and secrecy provisions should be strictly enforced. (See also par. 6*p*.)

Initial formation should be in columns which simplify control and maintenance of contact. On close approach to enemy position platoon columns may be broken into squad columns with decreased intervals and distances; finally lines of skirmishers with decreased intervals are formed. Bayonets should be fixed and rifles unloaded. Rate of advance should be prescribed. During advance the leader should constantly check direction.

Final assault should be made from positions close to

Execution

the enemy line with the bayonet and without firing.

Upon capturing the hostile position a prearranged signal should be given. Reorganization should be initiated immediately and groups located to resist counterattack.

q. Attack in woods (see FM 7–5, 7–10, 7–40).

Scope

A problem involving an interior rifle platoon, as part of a larger force, in an attack in woods.

Situations to be based on the assumption that the platoon has gained the near edge of the woods, reorganized, and is ready to continue the attack and to be drawn so as to require—

(1) Use of scouts to cover the advance.

(2) Advance to be made by azimuth direction, and when the wooded area is large, by bounds within the woods.

(3) Formation in line of small columns.

(4) Provision for flank protection.

(5) Decisions and orders by the platoon leader upon encountering resistance within the woods.

Execution

Scouts precede the platoon, reconnoitering to front and flanks, and signal the platoon to advance when all is clear. Formation of platoon varies with density of woods.

When advancing within woods, the platoon leader should supervise movement, take precautions to prevent loss of direction, maintain contact with adjacent units, and provide security.

Movement should be by bounds. Contact and control should be regained after each bound. The attack of hostile resistance should be a series of maneuvers to gain local objectives, primarily by flanking action. The platoon leader's decisions should be prompt and his orders clear and brief. He should control his platoon by aggressive leadership.

r. Night patrol (raid) (see FM 7–5, 21–100).

Scope

A problem involving a rifle platoon as a night patrol to gain information and capture prisoners.

Situations to be drawn so as to require—

(1) Organization of the patrol.

(2) Orders and instructions by the platoon leader.

(3) Plans and preparations for execution of the mission.

(4) Execution of the raid.

Execution

After a thorough map study, and ground reconnaissance, the platoon leader makes his plan. His preparations for the raid should include: rehearsal of unit on similar ground when practicable; identification marks visible at night for each member; signals for control; inspection of physical condition, arms, and equipment of members of the patrol; removal of distinctive insignia, written matter, maps, documents, and the like; and designation of key noncommissioned officers to assist in control during the movement and the raid.

The platoon leader must be able to organize the patrol to provide for control and all-around security. His orders must be clear and in detail as to duties of all members of the patrol. They should know the mission, enemy situation, general route to be followed, friendly troops through which the patrol will pass, and probable time of return. Instructions to security groups must be specific as to actions to be taken in case of discovery and an assembly area designated for

Execution

use if the members of the patrol become separated.

The platoon should reach its objective in secrecy, accomplish its mission, and return through the friendly lines.

■ 8. WEAPONS PLATOON.

a. Security on the march (see FM 7–5, 7–10).

Scope

A problem involving the employment of the weapons platoon in support of the action of rifle elements of the support of an advance guard.

Situations to be based on the company commander's order and to be drawn so as to require—

Decisions, plans, and orders of the platoon leader for the employment of the platoon as follows:

(1) To support the advance party.

(2) To support the advance party in a frontal attack and a rifle platoon of the support in a flanking movement.

(3) To support the company in an envelopment of both flanks of hostile resistance holding up the advance party.

Execution

The platoon leader should move near the company command group. He should be constantly abreast of the situation and observe the terrain, making tentative plans to employ the elements of the platoon, in order that he may be prepared to engage his unit promptly upon orders of the company commander. He should make prompt decisions and issue clear and concise orders to subordinates to carry out the company plan.

He should displace weapons forward immediately to support the company; weapons should be placed in firing positions without detailed reconnaissance.

He should delegate to the platoon sergeant or section leader supervision of the mortar section, when he commands the light machine-gun section.

Execution

Positions on the flanks, from which to bring enfilade fire on hostile elements, should be sought for the light machine-gun section. The light machine-gun section may accompany the flanking platoon in order to secure flanking or oblique fire and render close support to that platoon. Mortar squads may be attached to platoons making flanking movements, or held in a central position under company control.

b. Approach march (see FM 7–5, 7–10).

Scope

A problem involving the weapons platoon of a leading rifle company in approach march.

Situation, based on the company development order, to be drawn so as to require—

(1) Orders, disposition, and initial formations for advance.

(2) Reconnaissance of platoon leader along route of advance for firing position areas, crossings or minor detours, and dangerous areas.

(3) Action in support of attack on hostile elements.

(4) Control and movement of weapon carriers.

Execution

Platoon leader's orders should be clear, brief, and concise. They should cover the disposition of the platoon for the advance and prescribe the initial formation. The formation should conform in general to those of the rifle elements. It should be such as to minimize the effect of hostile fire, and retain the greatest practicable degree of control. During the advance, section leaders upon their own initiative may change the formation of their units to meet changes in the situation and to minimize the effect of hostile fire.

Continuous reconnaissance by platoon leader to provide

Execution

for readiness for action against hostile elements.

When concealment and cover are adequate, weapon carriers usually move with squads. On open ground, in daylight, weapon carriers usually move by bounds in rear of foot elements.

Air-antitank guards are detailed.

c. Preparation for attack (see FM 7–5, 7–10).

Scope

A problem involving the weapons platoon of a rifle company in occupation of a final assembly position by night and the advance to firing position areas, preparatory to supporting a daylight attack.

Situations to be drawn so as to require—

(1) Daylight reconnaissance by platoon leader to select and mark route to final assembly area and firing position area.

(2) Issuance of orders.

(3) Movement to final assembly area.

(4) Movement into firing position area.

(5) Disposition of carriers.

Execution

The platoon leader, accompanied by his section leaders, makes a reconnaissance of the final assembly area, and of firing position areas and routes thereto. Routes should be well marked, compass bearings and distances noted. Cover positions and initial firing position areas are selected for both sections. Positions for the light machine-gun section are selected for flanking or oblique fire, and the section is assigned definite targets or is assigned a sector of fire. Forward troops and targets should be visible from firing positions. The firing position of the mortars should be within effective range of their targets and within voice or arm-and-hand signaling distance of a point affording

Execution

observation of targets and friendly front-line troops. Observation posts are selected.

The platoon leader's orders should be clear and definite as to assigned missions and be issued from a point affording observation over the zone of action.

Movement to the final assembly position and firing position area should be made quietly. Compact formations should be used to facilitate maintaining contact and control. Firing positions should be occupied at such time as to insure fire support to the attacking echelon.

Section leaders check actual firing positions in semidaylight, making minor adjustments where required.

Carriers are moved as far forward as practicable and are concealed in terrain affording protection from small-arms fire. Weapons and ammunition are then moved forward by hand.

d. Attack (see FM 7–5, 7–10).

Scope

A problem involving the use of the weapons platoon in support of an interior

Execution

The weapons platoon leader accompanies the rifle company commander on recon-

Scope

front-line rifle company in a daylight attack.

Situation to be based on the company attack order, and to be drawn so as to require—

(1) Reconnaissance and orders of the platoon leader for the employment of the light machine-gun section to:

(*a*) Support by flanking fire a rifle platoon held up.

(*b*) Protect a flank of the company.

(*c*) Assist in breaking up a hostile counterattack.

(2) Series of situations requiring the employment of the 60-mm mortar section:

(*a*) For initial support of the attack.

(*b*) Displacement to conform to the advance of rifle units.

(*c*) Decentralization of fire direction to squad leaders.

Execution

naissance and disposes the platoon as directed by the company order.

Through aggressive leadership, the platoon leader should be constantly in touch with the situation and ready to support the attack of the rifle elements.

In employment of the light machine guns every opportunity is exploited to maneuver the section to positions from which flanking or oblique fire can be delivered in support of the attack. When suitable initial fire position areas are available, the light machine-gun section supports the attacking echelon; or it follows the attacking echelon at close distance until opportunity for employment arises.

The mortar section should support the attack from initial fire position areas or follow the advance of the attacking echelon to position areas within effective range. The platoon leader should closely observe the action of the leading rifle echelon and coordinate the fire action of the mortars with the fire and movement of the rifle units.

Displacement should be effected so as to cause as little interruption as possible in

Execution

the continuity of mortar support. As the enemy resistance weakens, squads may be assigned missions of direct support of rifle platoons.

e. Continuation of attack (see FM 7–5, 7–10).

Scope

A problem involving the weapons platoon of an interior rifle company in covering the reorganization of the company and preparatory measures to support continuation of the attack.

Situations to be drawn so as to require—

(1) Employment of the platoon to cover the reorganization of the company.

(2) Reorganization of the platoon.

(3) Measures taken in preparation to support a continuation of the attack.

Execution

Upon the capture of an objective, or a temporary halt by the attacking echelon for reorganization, the platoon leader should promptly direct section leaders to positions from which their weapons can protect the front and flanks of the leading rifle platoons against counterattack during the reorganization. In the absence of orders, section leaders take prompt action on their own initiative.

Section leaders replace squad leaders and key men who have become casualties and report strength and ammunition requirements to the platoon leader. The platoon leader replaces casualties in platoon headquarters and among section leaders.

Prompt reconnaissance should be initiated by the platoon leader for positions to support the resumption of the attack. Position areas should be designated and arrangements accomplished to facilitate movement to them.

f. Defense (see FM 5–15, 7–5, 7–10).

Scope

A problem involving the weapons platoon in the daylight occupation and organization of positions to support a front-line rifle company defense area.

Situations to be drawn so as to require—

(1) Reconnaissance of company area by platoon leader to locate firing position areas for prescribed final protective lines, sectors of fire, and target areas.

(2) Coordination with heavy weapons company.

(3) Issuance of orders to section leaders.

(4) Use of weapon carriers to place at positions a supply of ammunition in excess of normal loads.

(5) Disposition of weapon carriers when ammunition supply is depleted.

(6) Security measures during organization.

(7) Supervision by the platoon leader of—

(*a*) The movement of sections and squads by their leaders to position areas.

(*b*) Actual selection, preparation, occupation, and organization of firing positions

Execution

The platoon leader is furnished the company plan of defense and makes a reconnaissance of the defense area while the troops are moving forward. Section leaders, preceding their units, meet the platoon leader on the position to receive his order based on the company plan (missions of light machine guns as prescribed in battalion order). The platoon leader's order should indicate: primary and alternate firing positions; sectors of fire; final protective lines for light machine guns; primary and secondary target areas for all mortars; and supplementary firing positions and missions to be fired from these positions. It should also include instructions for the organization of the ground, for priority of work, and for final protective fires (signal, rate, and duration). The platoon leader contacts the heavy weapons company commander and coordinates the location of his light machine guns.

The prescribed supply of ammunition should be

Scope

and entrenchments and the preparation of camouflage by the sections and squads.

(c) Selection of observation posts by the squad leader of each 60-mm squad.

(*d*) Selection of observation posts by the section leader of the light machine-gun section.

Execution

dumped near weapon emplacements and stored in sheltered places.

During the organization of the position, weapons occupy emergency firing positions prepared to fire assigned missions.

Weapon carriers revert to battalion control when ammunition supply is completed. The platoon leader supervises the organization of the positions, or delegates the supervision of one section to the platoon sergeant when supervision of both sections is impracticable. The actual movement of units and the selection of exact firing positions as well as the occupation and organization of the position are accomplished by the section and squad leaders.

g. Defense at night (see FM 5–15, 5–20, 7–5, 7–10).

Scope

A problem involving the weapons platoon in the occupation and organization, during the night, of positions to support a front-line rifle company defense area.

Situations to be drawn so as to require—

(1) A daylight reconnaissance of the company defense area by the platoon leader to locate firing position areas for prescribed final protective

Execution

The platoon leader should arrange to have his section and squad leaders join him in the company defense area after the issuance of the company defense order. He should issue his platoon order in time to allow them time during daylight to select and mark weapon positions, set up aiming stakes, and mark routes of movement for weapons. All markings

Scope	*Execution*
lines, sectors of fire, and target areas. (2) Actions and orders of the platoon leader in effecting movement and emplacement of light machine guns and 60-mm mortars in— (*a*) Emergency firing positions. (*b*) Prepared positions during darkness without lights. (3) Disposition of weapon carriers when ammunition supply is completed. (4) Checking firing positions of weapons at daylight.	used must be readily recognizable at night. Weapons should be moved to position areas and placed in the emergency firing positions shortly after dark and organization of the ground should proceed quietly. Emplacements should be prepared for all the weapons and weapons moved to the prepared positions. Foxholes or slit trenches should be dug and camouflaged for personnel not sheltered in emplacements. The firing positions should be checked at daylight and necessary adjustments made to enable weapons to fire their assigned missions. Prescribed amounts of ammunition should be dumped and concealed near weapon positions and carriers should be released to battalion control in time to clear the battle position and be concealed from hostile observation before daylight.

h. Conduct of defense (see FM 7–5, 7–10).

Scope	*Execution*
A problem involving the weapons platoon of a front-line rifle company in the conduct of the defense against ground, air, and tank attacks.	Fire of weapons emplaced for defense of the main line of resistance should be withheld until the enemy approaches within 500 yards. At that time weapons engage

Scope

Situations to be based on the company defense order and to be drawn so as to require:

(1) Appropriate decisions, actions, and orders for the employment of the light machine guns and 60-mm mortars when:

(*a*) The enemy initiates the attack and approaches within 500 yards of the battle position.

(*b*) The attack approaches the band of final protective fires.

(*c*) The enemy effects a penetration in the company defense area.

(2) Action against hostile aerial or mechanized forces.

Execution

remunerative targets, the 60-mm mortars paying particular attention to targets defiladed from the fire of flat-trajectory weapons.

When final protective fires are called for, or ordered, light machine guns open fire along their assigned final protective lines and 60-mm mortars fire on their primary target areas in accordance with the prearranged fire plan. In the event of a hostile penetration, light machine guns employ flanking fire to prevent the enemy from widening the gap; 60-mm mortar fire should be used to prevent reinforcements from entering the gap.

In case of attack by hostile aerial or mechanized forces, weapon crews lower weapons in their emplacements to prevent damage, and individuals take shelter in prepared foxholes or slit trenches. When the attack of planes or tanks passes, crews put weapons in action without delay to meet the attack of foot troops.

i. Night withdrawal (see FM 7–5, 7–10).

Scope

A problem involving a night withdrawal by a weapons platoon from an interior front-

Execution

The platoon leader's plan should provide for all contingencies that may be fore-

Scope

line rifle company defense area.

Situations to be drawn so as to require—

(1) Daylight reconnaissance of designated platoon and company assembly areas and withdrawal routes thereto.

(2) Based on company order, designation of light machine-gun squad and 60-mm mortar squad(s) to remain with covering force.

(3) Measures to insure secrecy.

(4) Execution of withdrawal by light machine-gun and 60-mm mortar squads with—

(*a*) Front-line units.

(*b*) Covering force.

(5) Use of weapon carriers.

(6) Ammunition supply.

Execution

seen. Noncommissioned officers concerned should be notified. Guides should report to the company command post to accompany the party reconnoitering withdrawal routes and assembly areas. The hour of withdrawal should be given. The light machine-gun squad and 60-mm mortar squad(s) to be left with the company covering force should be designated.

During the day, activity should be normal. Night movements should be without lights and unusual noises avoided. Elements remaining with the covering force should simulate insofar as possible the normal activity of the entire unit.

Light machine-gun and mortar squads should withdraw by hand-carrying their weapons to the weapon carriers. Weapon carriers should be brought as far forward as battalion orders and the situation permit, but sufficiently in rear to prevent the enemy hearing truck movements or loading noises.

Only two men should stay with each light machine gun or mortar left with the company covering force. They should withdraw to the rear

Execution

on order of the company covering force commander. Vehicles should be left to expedite the withdrawal of the light machine-gun and mortar squads of the covering force.

When the ammunition needs of the light machine-gun and mortar squads of the covering force are met, the surplus should be removed by hand on withdrawal or destroyed.

j. Daylight withdrawal (see FM 7–5, 7–10).

Scope

A problem involving the daylight withdrawal of a weapons platoon as part of an interior front-line rifle company.

Situations to be drawn so as to require—

(1) Limited reconnaissance of assembly positions and routes of withdrawal.

(2) Employment of the light machine-gun section, when the front-line rifle platoons of the company are to be withdrawn by—

(*a*) Platoon echelon.

(*b*) Thinning from all platoons.

(3) Withdrawal of 60-mm mortar sections when—

(*a*) Mortar squads are attached to rifle platoons.

(*b*) Employed as a section.

Execution

The platoon leader should quickly formulate his plan and promptly issue brief, fragmentary orders to subordinate leaders, including: time withdrawal starts, sequence of withdrawal, routes of withdrawal, and initial platoon and company assembly areas.

Reconnaissance will frequently be coincident with the withdrawal. Routes which afford cover and concealment should be selected. If time permits noncommissioned officers are sent back to pick routes and assembly areas and lead their units to the rear.

When the company withdraws by platoon, the light machine-gun section should

Scope	*Execution*
(4) Control of units in the withdrawal. (5) Use of weapon carriers. (6) Ammunition supply.	be withdrawn first to a position from which it can cover gaps created by withdrawal of the platoons. Then the light machine-gun section should withdraw under cover of rifle elements to its rear. When the company withdraws by simultaneously thinning from platoons, light machine guns initially should be held to cover the company front. The squads should withdraw singly with the last rifle elements from the forward position, one gun moving to a rear covering position while the other gun remains in placé. If attached to rifle platoons, 60-mm mortar squads should effect their withdrawal under orders of rifle platoon leaders. When employed as a section, their withdrawal should be under direction of the weapons platoon leader. Withdrawal of light machine-gun and mortar squads should be by defiladed routes and so conducted as to unmask fire of the company covering force. Weapons should be hand-carried from firing positions to the weapon carriers which, by using defiladed routes, should be brought as far forward as

Execution

terrain and enemy action permit.

Section leaders are responsible for keeping the weapons platoon leader informed of the amount of ammunition on hand. Ammunition and supplies that cannot be removed should be destroyed prior to withdrawal.

k. Delaying action following daylight withdrawal (see FM 7–5, 7–10).

Scope

A problem involving the employment of the weapons platoon of a rifle company in delaying action following a daylight withdrawal.

Situation, based upon the company commander's plans, to be drawn so as to require—

(1) Orders of the platoon leader.

(2) Selection of positions by the platoon leader to deliver long-range light machine-gun fires against enemy elements.

(3) Selection of positions by mortar squad leaders attached to rifle platoons.

(4) Provisions for rendering continuous fire support to rifle platoons.

Execution

Orders should be brief and in fragmentary form. They should cover attachment of mortars to rifle platoons and the use of weapon carriers by elements of the platoon.

Positions near crests should be selected and occupied by the light machine guns to obtain long-range fields of fire and to facilitate withdrawals. Positions selected should be protected by rifle elements.

Mortar squads are usually attached to rifle platoons in delaying action and the squad leaders select firing positions for their squads. Positions should be near good observation from which the squad leader can control the fire of his mortar by voice or by arm-and-hand signals.

Execution

Early reconnaissance by the platoon leader and the mortar section leader of successive positions in rear will facilitate continuous support of the rifle elements. Light machine guns are displaced to the rear by squad echelon. The mortar section leader can point out firing positions for squads as they move back.

l. Attack in woods (see FM 7–5, 7–10).

Scope

A problem involving the employment of the weapons platoon of an interior rifle company in an attack through a large woods.

Situations, based on an advance through the woods after a reorganization in the near edge, and on the company commander's orders attaching mortar squads to rifle platoons, to be drawn so as to require—

(1) Assumption of the proper formation by the light machine-gun section and the mortar squads for advance through the woods.

(2) A series of situations requiring—

(*a*) The light machine-gun section to take up positions to fire through gaps in riflemen to reduce hostile resistance.

Execution

In a dense woods the formation should be squad column with intervals and distances reduced to the limit of visibility, and contact should be insured between units. The light machine-gun section should follow closely behind the attacking echelon. The mortar squads should follow closely behind the platoons to which they are attached. Direction should be maintained by means of compass and by guiding on the leading echelon. The light machine-gun section and mortar squads conform to the movements of the rifle elements.

The light machine guns take advantage of clearings or gaps in the line of riflemen to deliver fire at short ranges in order to reduce re-

Scope

(*b*) The light machine-gun squad used to dislodge snipers.

(*c*) The aggressiveness of the mortar squad leader in utilizing a clearing in the woods to support a rifle platoon by mortar fire.

(*d*) The selection of positions for the platoon to support the debouchment of the company from the woods.

Execution

sistance. They may also use bursts of fire to dislodge snipers.

By aggressive leadership the mortar squad leaders utilize openings in the woods as firing positions to support rifle platoons, whenever mortar fire can be observed.

During the reorganization of the company, prior to debouchment from the woods, the weapons platoon leader, with the assistance of his section leaders, should reconnoiter, select, and occupy positions from which the platoon can support the attack of the company to seize its next objective.

	Paragraph	Page
Administration:		
Medical service and evacuation	204–207	197
Motor maintenance	208	198
Supply	194–203	186
Administration group	1, 8, 196	1, 9, 186
Administrative orders	203	197
Advance guards:		
Rifle company as	94	99
Support of	92	93
Advance party	128	127
Aid men, company	205	197
Alternate positions	2	2
Ammunition, storage at firing positions	188	180
Ammunition supply	139, 201	131, 191
Antiaircraft security:		
Approach march	12, 166	15, 164
Assembly areas	14, 166	20, 164
Attack	108, 141, 165	115, 132, 164
Attack of river line	50	66
Bivouacs	10, 166	13, 164
Defense	71, 84, 120, 152, 166	79, 86, 125, 144, 164
Antimechanized defense:		
Approach march	12, 165	15, 164
Assembly areas	14, 165	20, 164
Attack	108, 141, 165	115, 132, 164
Attack of river line	49	65
Bivouacs	10, 165	13, 164
Defense	119, 152, 165	125, 144, 164
Marches	9, 165	11, 164
Antitank grenades	2	2
Approach march:		
Antiaircraft security	12	15
Antimechanized defense	12	15
Light machine-gun section	170	165
Rifle company:		
Conduct of	12	15
Connecting groups	12	15
Control	11, 13	14, 18
Day	12	15
Definition	11	14
Formations	11, 12	14, 15
Night	13	18
Objectives	12	15
Orders	11	14
Reconnaissance	12, 13	15, 18
Security	11, 14	14, 20
Rifle squad:		
Rifle platoon	106	107
Action when scouts are fired upon	142	132
Dispositions	142	132

	Paragraph	Page
Approach march—Continued.		
Rifle squad—Continued.		
Duties of scouts	142	132
Fire distribution	142	132
Infiltration	142	132
Passing through long-range fire	142	132
Position and duties of leaders	142	132
Preparation for coordinated attack	143	136
Reconnaissance	143	136
Rushes	142	132
Squad attack order	143	136
Using covered route of approach	142	132
60-mm mortar section	170	165
60-mm. mortar section	170	165
Areas, defense	69, 151	79, 144
Arm-and-hand signals	212	200
Assault:		
Light machine-gun section	179	175
Rifle company	22, 35	44, 57
Rifle platoon	108	115
Rifle squad	146	142
60-mm mortar section	179	175
Weapons platoon	179	175
Assault fire	22, 108, 145, 146	44, 115, 142, 142
Assembly areas:		
Rifle company:		
Attack	14	20
Reserve company in defense	63	85
River crossing	43	63
Security	14, 21	20, 37
Rifle platoon	106	107
Weapons platoon	171	168
Attack:		
Light machine-gun section. (*See* Weapons platoon.)		
Rifle company:		
Action by commander	16	23
Action when advance is halted	26, 35	47, 57
Advance at night	35	57
Advance through hostile position	23	44
Ammunition supply	201	191
Approach march	11–14	14
Assault	22, 35	44, 57
Assembly positions	14, 43	20, 63
Assistance to adjacent units	21	37
Command posts	19	37
Conduct of	20–26, 35	37, 57
Conferences with other commanders	15	22
Control	21, 34, 52	37, 53, 66
Coordination	21	37
Employment of weapons platoon	21	37
Fire and movement	21	37
Formations	17, 39, 47	26, 60, 65
Fortified position	54	68
Frontages	17	26
Individual protection	App. I	202

	Paragraph	Page
Attack—Continued.		
Rifle company—Continued.		
Infiltration at night	36	59
In woods	37–40	60
Line of departure	17	26
Movement to line of departure	14, 20	20, 37
Night attacks	31–36	50
Objectives	17	26
Orders	15–19, 32, 38	22, 50, 60
Plan of maneuver	17, 34	26, 53
Plans	15–19, 28, 34	22, 48, 53
Positions	17	26
Pursuit	25	46
Raids	55–58	68
Reconnaissance	15–19, 21, 29, 33	22, 37, 49, 52
Reorganization	24, 38	45, 60
Reserve rifle company	27–30	47
River lines	42–53	63
Secrecy	34	53
Security	17, 21	26, 37
Signal communication	34, 52	53, 66
Sketches	15	22
Supporting weapons	17, 39	26, 60
Supports	17, 21	26, 37
Time of attack	17, 34	26, 53
Villages	41	62
Zones of action	17	26
Rifle platoon:		
Ammunition supply	201	191
Approach march	106	107
Conduct of attack	108	115
Individual protection	App. I	202
Pursuit	109	118
Reconnaissance, plans, and orders	107	112
Support platoon	110	118
Rifle squad:		
Ammunition supply	139, 201	131, 191
Approach march	142–143	132
Conduct of attack	144–148	138
Assault	145	142
Fire and movement	144	138
Movement to attack	144	138
Position and duties of assistant squad leader	144	138
Position and duties of squad leader	144	138
Reorganization	147	142
Support squad	148	143
Fire orders	140	132
60-mm mortar section. (*See* Weapons platoon.)		
Weapons platoon:		
Ammunition supply	201	191
Approach march	170	165
Assault, supporting fires during	179	175
Assembly areas	171	168
Conduct of attack	177–181	173
Control	177	173
Displacement	178	174

	Paragraph	Page
Attack—Continued.		
Weapons platoon—Continued.		
Emplacements	App. I	202
Individual protection	App. I	202
Movement into position	175	173
Night employment	181	175
Orders	174	171
Reconnaissance	172	168
Reorganization	180	175
Selection of firing positions	173	170
Supporting fires	177, 179	173, 175
Targets	176	173
Automatic rifle	2	2
Bivouac:		
Outpost	96	101
Rifle company	10	13
Weapons platoon	169	165
Boundaries in defense	65	73
Camouflage	187	179
Carbine	2	2
Classes of supply	197–201	187
Combat orders, company commander	7	7
Combat outpost	78, 98, 125	83, 104, 126
Combat patrols	132, 157	129, 145
Command group:		
Rifle company	1, 8	1, 9
Rifle platoon	101	106
Weapons platoon	161	160
Command post:		
Rifle company:		
Attack	19	37
Defense	69, 81	79, 85
Rifle platoon	121	125
Weapons platoon	167, 189	165, 180
Communication:		
Rifle company	19, 34, 52, 209–214	37, 53, 66, 199
Rifle platoon	102, 121, 209–214	106, 125, 199
Weapons platoon	167, 173, 189, 209–214	165, 170, 180, 199
Company commander, duties of	7	7
Company headquarters	1	1
Company mess location	197	187
Company transport	196, 201	186, 191
Composition:		
Light machine-gun section and squad	160	160
Rifle company	1, 196	1, 186
Rifle platoon	100	106
Rifle squad	133	130
60-mm mortar section and squad	160	160
Weapons platoon	160	169
Conduct of attack:		
Rifle company	20–26, 35	37, 57

	Paragraph	Page
Conduct of attack—Continued.		
Rifle platoon	108	115
Rifle squad	144–148	138
Weapons platoon and its elements	177–181	173
Conduct of defense:		
Rifle company	76	81
Rifle platoon	124	126
Rifle squad	153	144
Weapons platoon and its elements	190	182
Conduct of fire, weapons platoon	163	162
Connecting files	12, 157	15, 145
Connecting groups	12, 157	15, 145
Control, fire	136, 177	131, 173
Coordination of attack	21	37
Counterattacks	78	83
Cover positions	2	2
Covering forces	86	86
Defense:		
Light machine-gun section and squad (*See* Weapons platoon.)		
Rifle company:		
Ammunition supply	201	191
Antiaircraft security	72, 85	80, 86
Antimechanized defense	71, 84	79, 86
Assembly area of reserve company	83	85
Boundaries	65	73
Combat outposts	78	83
Command posts	69, 81	79, 85
Conduct of	76	81
Counterattacks	78	83
Defense areas	66	74
Delaying action	89, 90	90, 91
Distribution of units	64, 66	73, 74
Fire plan	67	78
Front-line company	57–76	69
Frontages and depths	65	73
Hasty occupation of position	74	81
Individual protection	App. I	202
Local security	73	81
Mission	58, 66, 78	70, 74, 83
Night dispositions	75	81
Observation posts	68, 80	79, 85
Occupation of position	74	81
Orders	61	71
Organization of ground	70, 82	79, 85
Reconnaissance	60	71
Relief	63	72
Reserve rifle company	77–85, 88, 181	83, 90, 175
Security	73	81
Support platoon	66	74
Tactical employment	58	70
Troop leading	59	70
Weapons platoon	66, 79	74, 85
Withdrawal	86–88	86
Rifle platoon	111–126	121
Ammunition supply	201	191

	Paragraph	Page
Defense—Continued.		
Rifle platoon—Continued.		
Antiaircraft security	120	125
Antimechanized defense	119	125
Command and observation post	121	125
Conduct of defense	124	126
Distribution of squads	117	123
Front-line platoon	117	123
Support platoon	117	123
Fire plan	118	124
Frontages	116	122
Individual protection	App. I	202
Local security	123	125
Organization of ground	122	125
Platoon as combat outpost	125	126
Platoon defense order	114	122
Reconnaissance	113	122
Retrograde movements	126	126
Tactical employment	111	121
Missions	111	121
Support platoon	111	121
Troop leading	112	122
Rifle squad	149–155	143
Ammunition supply	201	191
Antimechanized defense and antiaircraft security	152	144
Conduct of defense	153	144
Daylight withdrawal	155	145
Night withdrawal	154	145
Orders	150	143
Organization of the squad defense area	151	144
Squad defense order	150	143
60-mm mortar section and squad. (See Weapons platoon.)		
Weapons platoon:		
Ammunition, storage at firing positions	19	37
Ammunition supply	201	191
Camouflage	187	179
Conduct of defense	190	182
Emplacements	App. I	202
Firing positions	184	177
Individual protection	App. I	202
Missions	182	176
Night employment	192	184
Orders	186	178
Positions of leaders	189	180
Range cards	187	179
Reconnaissance	183	177
Reserve company	182	176
Sectors of fire and target areas	185	178
Withdrawal	193	184
Defense areas	66, 151	74, 144
Defense of obstacles	159	159
Delaying action	89, 90	90, 91
Designation, target	135	130
Development order	11	14
Direction and control of night attack	34	53

	Paragraph	Page
Directives for tactical training	App. II	214
Discipline, fire	137	131
Displacement, weapons platoon	178	174
Distributing points:		
Ammunition	201	191
Company mess location	197	187
Gasoline and oil	199	190
Distribution of rifle company:		
Attack	17, 39, 47	26, 60, 65
Defense	64, 66, 117	73, 74, 123
Duties:		
Attached medical (aid men)	205	197
Company administration group	196	186
Company command group	8	9
Company commander	7	7
Light machine-gun section and squad leaders	162, 189	161, 180
Platoon scouts	106	107
Rifle platoon command group	101	106
Rifle squad, leaders	134, 142, 144	130, 132, 138
Rifle squad, scouts	142	132
60-mm mortar section and squad leaders	162, 189	161, 180
Weapons platoon command group	161, 189	160, 180
Emplacements	App. I	202
Engineer supplies	200	190
Equipment	3, 211	6, 199
Estimate of situation	6	7
Extra ammunition	14, 201	20, 191
Fire and movement	21, 108, 144	37, 115, 138
Fire, assault	146	142
Fire, conduct of in weapons platoon	163	162
Fire control	136	131
Fire discipline	137	131
Fire distribution	142	132
Fire orders	140	132
Fire, organization of in defense	67, 118	78, 124
Flags, signal	212	200
Flank combat patrol	132, 157	129, 145
Flank guard:		
Rifle company	95	99
Rifle platoon	130	129
Flashlights, signaling	212	200
Fortified position, attack of	54	68
Front-line company:		
In defense	57–76	69
In withdrawal	86–88	86
Frontages and depths:		
Attack	17	26
Defense	65	73
Gasoline, supply of	199	190
Guides	14	20
Hand grenades	2	2
Hasty field fortifications	App. I	202

	Paragraph	Page
Headquarters, rifle company	1	1
Individual protection	App. I	202
Individual rolls	202	196
Infiltration	36, 142	59, 132
Liaison	29	49
Light machine gun	2	2
Light machine-gun section and squad:		
Ammunition supply	201	191
Antiaircraft security	166	164
Antimechanized defense	165	164
Attack	170–161	165
Bivouac	169	165
Communication	167	165
Composition	160	160
Conduct of fire	163	162
Defense	162–193	176
Duties of leaders	162	161
Observation	164	163
Route march	169	165
Weapon carrier loads	168	165
Line of departure	14, 20, 108, 144	20, 37, 115, 138
Local security in defense	73, 123	81, 125
Machine gun, light	2	2
Machine gun, light, section and squad. (*See* Light machine-gun section and squad.)		
Maps and sketches	15	22
March outpost	99, 126, 131, 157	105, 127, 129, 145
Marches:		
Rifle company	9	11
Rifle platoon	103	107
Weapons platoon	169	165
Medical service and evacuation:		
Company aid men	205	197
Orders	207	198
References	204	197
Relation to battalion medical service	206	198
Supply	200	190
Mess location	197	187
Messengers	212	200
Mortar, 60-mm	2	2
Mortar, 60-mm, section and squad. (*See* 60-mm section and squad.)		
Motor maintenance	208	196
Movement of weapons	2	2
Movement to firing positions	175	173
Movement to line of departure	14, 20, 108, 144	20, 37 115, 138
Night:		
Attack:		
Action when objective is captured	35	57
Advance, rate of	35	57

	Paragraph	Page
Night—Continued.		
Assault	35	57
Direction and control	34	53
Infiltration	36	59
Maneuver	34	53
Orders	32	50
Plans	34	53
Reconnaissance	33	52
Secrecy	34	53
Security	32	50
Signal communication	34	53
Time	34	53
Weapons platoon	181	175
Defense	75, 192	81, 184
Marches	9	11
Withdrawal	86, 126, 154, 193	86, 126, 145, 184
Objectives:		
Rifle company	17	26
Rifle platoon	106–108	107
Obstacles, defense of	159	159
Occupation and organization of firing positions	187	179
Off-carrier positions	2	2
Offensive combat. (*See* Attack.)		
Orders:		
Light machine-gun section and squad:		
Attack	174	171
Defense	186	178
Rifle company:		
Aid station	207	198
Approach march	11	14
Attack	15–19, 32, 38	22, 50, 60
Combat, general	7	7
Defense	61	71
Supply	203	197
Rifle platoon:		
Approach march	106	107
Attack	107	112
Defense	114	122
Rifle squad:		
Attack	143	136
Defense	149	143
Fire	140	132
Signal communication	213	201
60-mm mortar section and squad:		
Attack	174	171
Defense	186	178
Weapons platoon:		
Attack	174	171
Defense	186	178
Organization of the ground	70, 82, 122, 151, 187	79, 85, 125, 144, 179
Outguards	157	145
Outposts:		
Bivouac	96	101
Combat	78, 98, 125, 131	83, 104, 126, 129

	Paragraph	Page
Outposts—Continued.		
General	97, 131	103, 129
March	99, 128, 131, 157	105, 127, 129, 145
Outguards	157	145
Patrols	157, 158	145, 150
Panels	212	200
Patrols:		
Rifle platoon:		
Advance party	128	127
Flank combat	132	129
Rear party	129	128
Rifle squad:		
Flank combat	157	145
Point of advance, flank, or rear guard	157	145
Reconnaissance patrols	158	150
Security patrols	157	145
Pistol	2	2
Plans:		
Class I supply	197	187
Plans—Continued.		
Rifle company:		
Attack	15–19, 28, 34	22, 48, 53
Counterattack	27, 28	47, 48
Defense	60	71
Fire	67	78
Rifle platoon:		
Attack	107	112
Defense	117, 118	123, 124
Fire	118	124
Rifle squad	143	136
Platoon, rifle. (*See* Rifle platoon.)		
Platoon scouts	106	107
Platoon, weapons. (*See* Weapons platoon.)		
Point of advance, flank, or rear guard	157	145
Positions:		
Alternate	2	2
Attack	17	26
Cover	2	2
Delaying	89, 90	90, 91
Firing	2	2
Fortified, attack of	54	68
Occupation of	74, 187	81, 179
Off-carrier	2	2
Primary	2	2
Supplementary	2	2
Weapons, types of	2	2
Primary positions	2	2
Pursuit	25, 109	46, 118
Pyrotechnics	212	200
Raids	55–58	68
Range	138	131
Range cards	187	179
Rations	197	187

	Paragraph	Page
Rear guards:		
Rifle company as	94	99
Rifle platoon	129	128
Support of	93	97
Rear party	129	128
Reconnaissance:		
Patrols	158	150
Rifle company:		
Approach march	12, 13	15, 18
Assembly areas	14	20
Attack	15–19, 21, 29	22, 37
Defense	60	71
Night attack	33	52
Rifle platoon:		
Attack	106–108	107
Defense	113	122
Rifle squad	143	136
Weapons platoon and elements:		
Attack	172	168
Defense	183	177
Reliefs	63	72
Reorganization	24, 38, 108, 147, 180	45, 60, 115, 142, 175
Repair of weapons and equipment	198	189
Replenishment of ammunition	201	191
Reserve rifle company:		
Attack	27–30	47
Defense	77–85, 88, 182	83, 90, 176
Withdrawal	88	90
Responsibility for supply	195	186
Retrograde movements:		
Rifle company	86–90	86
Covering force	86	86
Delaying action	89, 90	90, 91
Withdrawal	86–88	86
Rifle platoon	126	126
Rifle squad	154, 155	145
Rifle and bayonet	2	2
Rifle, automatic	2	2
Rifle company:		
Defensive combat	58–89	70
General	1–10	1
Medical service and evacuation	204–207	197
Motor maintenance	208	198
Offensive combat	11–36	14
Reserve company	27–30, 77–85, 88, 182	47, 83, 90, 176
Security missions	91–99	93
Signal communication	209–214	199
Supply	194–203	186
Rifle platoon	100–132	106
Ammunition supply in combat	105	107
Attack	106–110	107
Composition	100	106
Control and communication	102	106
Defense	112–127	122

	Paragraph	Page
Rifle platoon—Continued.		
Duties of command group	101	106
Route march	103	107
Security missions	127–132	126
Special operations	104	107
Rifle squad	133–159	130
Ammunition supply	139	131
Attack	140–148	132
Composition	133	130
Defense	149–155	143
Duties of leaders	134	130
Fire control	136	131
Fire discipline	137	131
Range	138	131
Security missions	156–159	145
Target designation	135	130
River line, attack of:		
Action after landing	48	65
Antiaircraft security	50	66
Antimechanized defense	49	65
Assembly areas	43	63
Communication and control	52	66
Crossing the water	46	65
Formations	47	65
Improvised crossing	53	66
Movement to the river	45	64
Orders	44	63
Plans	44	63
Weapon carriers	44	63
Route march:		
Rifle company	9	11
Rifle platoon	103	107
Weapons platoon	169	165
Scouts:		
Platoon	106	107
Rifle squad	142	132
Secrecy for night attack	34	53
Security:		
Light machine-gun section, antiaircraft and antimechanized	165, 166	164
Patrols	157	145
Rifle company:		
Antiaircraft	9, 10, 12, 14, 50, 72, 85	11, 13, 15, 20, 66, 80, 86
Antimechanized	9, 10, 12, 14, 49, 71, 84	11, 13, 15, 20, 65, 79, 86
Advance guard	92, 94	93, 99
Approach march	12	15
Assembly areas	11, 14	14, 20
Attack	17, 21	26, 37
Combat outpost	98	104
Defense	73	81
Flank guard	95	99
March outpost	99	105

	Paragraph	Page
Security—Continued.		
Missions	91–99	93
Rear guard	93, 94	97, 99
Support (in general outpost)	97	103
Support of advance guard	92	93
Support of bivouac outpost	96	101
Support of rear guard	93	97
Rifle platoon:		
Advance party	128	127
Antiaircraft	108, 120	115, 125
Antimechanized	108, 119	115, 125
Attack	108	115
Defense	123	125
Flank combat patrol	132	129
Flank guard	130	129
Outpost (combat, march, general)	131	129
Rear party	129	128
Rifle squad, antiaircraft and antimechanized	141, 152	132, 144
60-mm mortar section, antiaircraft and antimechanized	165, 166	164
Weapons platoon:		
Antiaircraft	166	164
Antimechanized	165	164
Signal communication:		
Rifle company	19, 34, 52, 209–214	37, 53, 66, 199
Rifle platoon	102, 121, 209–214	106, 125, 199
Weapons platoon	167, 173, 209–214	165, 170, 199
Signal communication system:		
Employment of means	212	200
Equipment	211	199
Orders	213	201
Personnel	210	199
References	209	199
Relation to battalion system	214	201
60-mm mortar section and squad:		
Antiaircraft security	166	164
Antimechanized defense	165	164
Attack	170–181	165
Bivouac	169	165
Composition	160	160
Communication	167	165
Conduct of fire	163	162
Defense	182–193	176
Duties of leaders	162	161
Observation	164	163
Route march	169	165
Weapon carrier loads	168	165
Sketches	15	22
Sound-powered telephone	211, 212	199, 200
Sound signals	212	200
Supplementary positions	2	2

	Paragraph	Page
Supply:		
Administration group	196	186
Class I (rations and water)	197	187
Class II (TBA allowances)	198	189
Class III (gasoline, oil, and grease)	199	190
Class IV (Engineer, medical, etc.)	200	190
Class V (ammunition)	139, 201	131, 191
Distributing points	197, 199, 201	187, 190, 191
Individual rolls	202	196
Orders	203	197
References	194	186
Responsibility	195	186
Transportation	196, 201	186, 191
Support platoon	110, 111	118, 121
Support squad	148	143
Supporting fires during attack	177, 179	173, 175
Supporting weapons	17, 39	26, 60
Supports, rifle company	17, 21, 66, 111	26, 37, 74, 121
Tactical employment:		
Rifle company	5, 58	6, 70
Rifle platoon	107, 111	112, 121
Tactical training directives	App. II	214
Target designation	135	130
Targets, weapons platoon	176, 185	173, 178
Telephone, sound-powered	211, 212	199, 200
Time of attack	17, 34	28, 53
Training directives, tactical	App. II	214
Transport, company	4, 13, 196, 201	8, 18, 186, 191
Transportation	196, 201	186, 191
Troop leading:		
Rifle company	7, 59	7, 70
Rifle platoon	112	122
Weapon carriers:		
Ammunition supply	196, 201	186, 191
Assembly areas	14	20
Bivouac	169	165
Loads	168	165
Route march	169	165
Weapons:		
Method of movement	2	2
Of rifle company	2	2
Weapons emplacements	App. I	202
Weapons platoon:		
Ammunition supply	201	191
Antiaircraft security	166	164
Antimechanized defense	165	164
Attack	17, 21, 39, 170–181	28, 37, 60, 185
Bivouac	169	185
Communication	167	165
Composition	160	160
Conduct of fire	163	162
Defense	66, 79, 182–193	74, 85, 176

	Paragraph	Page
Weapons platoons—Continued.		
Duties of command group	161	160
Observation	163	162
Route march	169	165
Weapon carrier loads	168	165
Withdrawal:		
Rifle company	86–88	86
Rifle platoon	126	126
Rifle squad	154, 155	145
Weapons platoon	193	184
Woods, attack in:		
Advance through woods	39	60
Against near edge	38	60
Debouchment from woods	46	65
Dispositions	39	60
Orders	38	60
Reorganization	38	60
Supporting weapons	39	60
Zone of reconnaissance	106	107
Zones of action	17	26

REGRADED UNCLASSIFIED BY AUTHORITY
OF E.O. 10501
BY DA Krieger ON 5/30/03

[redacted]

INFANTRY FIELD MANUAL

RIFLE COMPANY

RIFLE REGIMENT

CHANGES No. 2

WAR DEPARTMENT,
WASHINGTON, April 5, 1943.

FM 7–10, June 2, 1942 is changed as follows:

2. WEAPONS.

* * * * *

b. Individual weapons.

* * * * *

(6) (Added.) *Antitank rockets.*

(*a*) Rocket launchers and high explosive antitank rockets are provided for use against tanks and armored vehicles. Rockets are also effective against buildings and masonry. To provide necessary assistance in loading and reloading, antitank rocket launchers are normally operated by teams of two men each. A practice rocket is provided for instruction in mechanical use, marksmanship, estimation of leads, and technique of fire. The rocket may be fired from the prone, standing, sitting, or kneeling position; it may also be fired from a two-man fox hole, provided the hole is so constructed that the blast from the rear of the launcher will not be deflected against the loader or other nearby personnel.

(*b*) The performance of the high-explosive rocket is generally similar to that of the antitank rifle grenade, except that the effect is approximately 30 percent greater for the rocket than for the grenade. The rocket has a maximum range of 800 yards. It is reasonably accurate against moving targets at ranges up to 300 yards. In order to achieve greater accuracy and assist in effecting surprise, fire against moving targets should be withheld until the last practicable moment.

(*c*) Selected individuals will be specially trained to function as rocket teams and all members of the company will be given sufficient training to familiarize them with the use of rockets and with the care and cleaning of launchers.

518731°—43

(*d*) The launchers and rockets issued to the rifle company will normally be carried on [redacted]ned to the weapons platoon. When required for use in combat, each launcher will be manned by a team of two men, designated by the company commander.

(*e*) The rockets will be employed for the close-in protection of the company from armored vehicles which have evaded other antitank means; and for offensive use against machine-gun nests or such other targets as the situation may require. Upon entering combat, the company commander assigns the launchers in the manner which will most effectively further his mission. In the attack, where the terrain favors hostile tank attack, they should be near that part of the company most threatened by such an attack. During reorganization after an attack, and in the defense, they should be placed near the perimeter of the company to cover the most likely avenues of mechanized approach. The company commander will coordinate the use of the rocket launchers with any other antitank protection furnished his company. They may be assigned to tank hunting parties when constituted.

(*f*) In addition to its use as an antitank projectile when fired from the launcher, the rocket may be used as an antitank mine as follows:

1. The rocket is placed horizontally, or at an angle, nose up, in a hole in the ground about 2 feet deep, properly sited to achieve the desired effect. It may be placed in a roadbed or set horizontally into the side of a cut or bank. It is fired electrically by attaching the ends of two wires to the rocket ignition wires, one to the brass contact ring on the ogive, the other to the fins. Ordinary twisted pair field telephone wire and the dry cell battery from the launcher suffice for this purpose.
2. Figure 1½ (A) illustrates a rocket prepared for firing as an antitank mine. The container cap has been removed and the other end knocked out. The container is thus used as a guide for the rocket. A hole is punched in the container cap through which electric firing device wires (or trip wire) are run. When connections have been made, the container

cap is slid in place over the fins to protect the contacts from fouling. Loose dirt and leaves are then placed over all of the rocket except the nose; the nose is concealed by covering with leaves or light bunches of grass.

3. Figure 1½ (B) illustrates the rear of a rocket prepared for firing, using a trip wire actuated igniter (pull type engineer igniter with blank cartridge).

4. One or more rockets may be buried, nose up, next to any standard antitank mine, so that when the mine is exploded by a tank in the usual manner, the rockets will detonate sympathetically, destroying the tank.

* * * * *

[A. G. 062.11 (3–16–43).] (C 2, Apr. 5, 1943.)

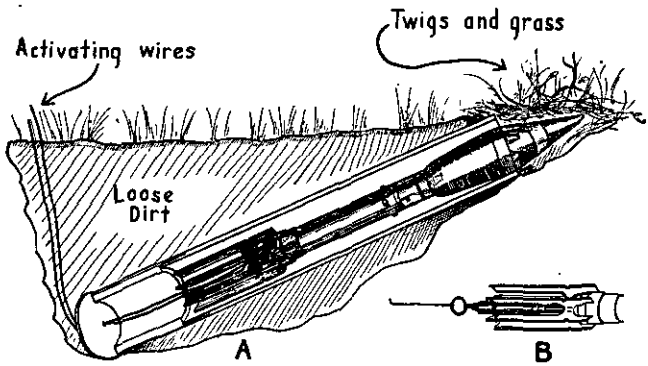


FIGURE 1½.—Antitank rocket M6 employed as antitank mine.

[A. G. 062.11 (3–16–43).] (C 2, Apr. 5, 1943.)

BY ORDER OF THE SECRETARY OF WAR:

G. C. MARSHALL,
Chief of Staff.

OFFICIAL:

J. A. ULIO,
Major General,
The Adjutant General.

U. S. GOVERNMENT PRINTING OFFICE: 1943